

The pkgsrc guide

Documentation on the NetBSD packages system

(2022/01/01)

Alistair Crooks

`agc@NetBSD.org`

Hubert Feyrer

`hubertf@NetBSD.org`

The pkgsrc Developers

The pkgsrc guide: Documentation on the NetBSD packages system

by Alistair Crooks, Hubert Feyrer, The pkgsrc Developers

Published 2022/01/01 06:45:38

Copyright © 1994-2022 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc

pkgsrc is a centralized package management system for Unix-like operating systems. This guide provides information for users and developers of pkgsrc. It covers installation of binary and source packages, creation of binary and source packages and a high-level overview about the infrastructure.

Table of Contents

1. What is pkgsrc?	1
1.1. Introduction	1
1.1.1. Why pkgsrc?	1
1.1.2. Supported platforms	2
1.2. Overview	3
1.3. Terminology	4
1.3.1. Roles involved in pkgsrc	4
1.4. Typography	5
I. The pkgsrc user's guide	1
2. Getting help	2
3. Where to get pkgsrc and how to keep it up-to-date	3
3.1. Getting pkgsrc for the first time	3
3.1.1. As tar archive	3
3.1.2. Via anonymous CVS	4
3.2. Keeping pkgsrc up-to-date	4
3.2.1. Via tar files	5
3.2.2. Via CVS	5
3.2.2.1. Switching between different pkgsrc branches	5
3.2.2.2. What happens to my changes when updating?	5
4. Using pkgsrc on systems other than NetBSD	6
4.1. Binary distribution	6
4.2. Bootstrapping pkgsrc	6
5. Using pkgsrc	7
5.1. Using binary packages	7
5.1.1. Finding binary packages	7
5.1.2. Installing binary packages	7
5.1.3. Updating packages	8
5.1.4. Deinstalling packages	8
5.1.5. Getting information about installed packages	8
5.1.6. Checking for security vulnerabilities in installed packages	8
5.1.7. Finding if newer versions of your installed packages are in pkgsrc	9
5.1.8. Other administrative functions	10
5.2. Building packages from source	10
5.2.1. Requirements	10
5.2.2. Fetching distfiles	10
5.2.3. How to build and install	11
6. Configuring pkgsrc	13
6.1. General configuration	13
6.2. Variables affecting the build process	13
6.3. Variables affecting the installation process	14
6.4. Selecting and configuring the compiler	15
6.4.1. Selecting the compiler	15
6.4.2. Additional flags to the compiler (CFLAGS)	16
6.4.3. Additional flags to the linker (LDFLAGS)	16
6.5. Developer/advanced settings	16

6.6. Selecting Build Options	17
7. Creating binary packages	18
7.1. Building a single binary package	18
7.2. Settings for creation of binary packages	18
8. Creating binary packages for everything in pkgsrc (bulk builds)	19
8.1. Preparations	19
8.2. Running a bulk build	19
8.2.1. Configuration	19
8.3. Requirements of a full bulk build	21
8.4. Bulk build variants.....	21
8.4.1. Detect unknown configure options	21
8.4.2. Detect classes of bugs by forcing compiler warnings.....	21
8.4.3. Force compiler options only in the build phase	22
8.4.4. Use custom directories.....	23
8.4.5. Turn warnings into errors.....	23
8.4.6. Reject packages for which pkglint reports errors	24
8.4.7. Reject packages that contain forbidden strings.....	24
8.4.8. Reject packages whose self-test fails.....	24
8.4.9. Reject packages that use undefined shell variables.....	24
8.4.10. Turn off verbose logging.....	25
8.5. Creating a multiple CD-ROM packages collection.....	25
8.5.1. Example of cdpack.....	25
9. Directory layout of the installed files	27
9.1. File system layout in <code>\${LOCALBASE}</code>	27
9.2. File system layout in <code>\${VARBASE}</code>	29
10. Frequently Asked Questions	30
10.1. Are there any mailing lists for pkg-related discussion?	30
10.2. Utilities for package management (pkgtools).....	30
10.3. How to use pkgsrc as non-root	31
10.4. How to resume transfers when fetching distfiles?	32
10.5. How can I install/use modular X.org from pkgsrc?.....	32
10.6. How to fetch files from behind a firewall	32
10.7. How to fetch files from HTTPS sites.....	32
10.8. How do I tell make fetch to do passive FTP?	33
10.9. How to fetch all distfiles at once	33
10.10. What does “Don’t know how to make /usr/share/tmac/tmac.andoc” mean?.....	33
10.11. What does “Could not find bsd.own.mk” mean?.....	34
10.12. Using ‘sudo’ with pkgsrc.....	34
10.13. How do I change the location of configuration files?	34
10.14. Automated security checks.....	35
10.15. Why do some packages ignore my CFLAGS?	35
10.16. A package does not build. What shall I do?	36
10.17. What does “Makefile appears to contain unresolved cvs/rcs/??? merge conflicts” mean?	36

II. The pkgsrc developer's guide	37
11. Getting help	38
12. Package components - files, directories and contents	39
12.1. Makefile	39
12.2. distinfo	41
12.3. patches/*	41
12.3.1. Structure of a single patch file	41
12.3.2. Creating patch files	42
12.3.3. Sources where the patch files come from	42
12.3.4. Patching guidelines	42
12.3.5. Feedback to the author	43
12.4. Other mandatory files	44
12.5. Optional files	44
12.5.1. Files affecting the binary package	44
12.5.2. Files affecting the build process	45
12.5.3. Files affecting nothing at all	46
12.6. work*	46
12.7. files/*	46
13. The build process	47
13.1. Introduction	47
13.2. Program location	47
13.3. Directories used during the build process	48
13.4. Running a phase	48
13.5. The <i>fetch</i> phase	48
13.5.1. What to fetch and where to get it from	49
13.5.2. How are the files fetched?	50
13.6. The <i>checksum</i> phase	50
13.7. The <i>extract</i> phase	51
13.8. The <i>patch</i> phase	51
13.9. The <i>tools</i> phase	51
13.10. The <i>wrapper</i> phase	51
13.11. The <i>configure</i> phase	52
13.12. The <i>build</i> phase	53
13.13. The <i>test</i> phase	53
13.14. The <i>install</i> phase	53
13.15. The <i>package</i> phase	55
13.16. Cleaning up	55
13.17. Other helpful targets	55
14. Creating a new pkgsrc package from scratch	61
14.1. Common types of packages	62
14.1.1. Python modules and programs	63
14.1.2. R packages	63
14.1.3. TeXlive packages	64
14.2. Examples	64
14.2.1. How the <i>www/nvu</i> package came into pkgsrc	64
14.2.1.1. The initial package	64
14.2.1.2. Fixing all kinds of problems to make the package work	65
14.2.1.3. Installing the package	68

15. Programming in Makefiles.....	69
15.1. Caveats.....	69
15.2. Makefile variables	69
15.2.1. Naming conventions.....	70
15.3. Code snippets.....	70
15.3.1. Adding things to a list	70
15.3.2. Echoing a string exactly as-is	70
15.3.3. Passing CFLAGS to GNU configure scripts	71
15.3.4. Handling possibly empty variables	71
16. Options handling	73
16.1. Global default options	73
16.2. Converting packages to use <code>bsd.options.mk</code>	73
16.3. Option Names.....	75
16.4. Determining the options of dependencies	76
17. Tools needed for building or running	77
17.1. Tools for <code>pkgsrc</code> builds	77
17.2. Tools needed by packages	77
17.3. Tools provided by platforms.....	77
18. Buildlink methodology	79
18.1. Converting packages to use buildlink3.....	79
18.2. Writing <code>buildlink3.mk</code> files.....	80
18.2.1. Anatomy of a <code>buildlink3.mk</code> file.....	80
18.2.2. Updating <code>BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg</code> and <code>BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg</code> in <code>buildlink3.mk</code> files.....	82
18.3. Writing <code>builtin.mk</code> files	83
18.3.1. Anatomy of a <code>builtin.mk</code> file.....	83
18.3.2. Global preferences for native or <code>pkgsrc</code> software	84
19. PLIST issues	86
19.1. RCS ID	86
19.2. Semi-automatic PLIST generation	86
19.3. Tweaking output of make print-PLIST	86
19.4. Variable substitution in PLIST	86
19.5. Man page compression	88
19.6. Changing PLIST source with <code>PLIST_SRC</code>	88
19.7. Platform-specific and differing PLISTs.....	88
19.8. Build-specific PLISTs	88
19.9. Sharing directories between packages.....	88
20. The <code>pkginstall</code> framework	90
20.1. Files and directories outside the installation prefix	90
20.1.1. Directory manipulation	90
20.1.2. File manipulation	91
20.2. Configuration files	91
20.2.1. How <code>PKG_SYSCONFDIR</code> is set	92
20.2.2. Telling the software where configuration files are	92
20.2.3. Patching installations	93
20.2.4. Disabling handling of configuration files.....	93
20.3. System startup scripts.....	93
20.3.1. Disabling handling of system startup scripts	94

20.4. System users and groups	94
20.5. System shells	94
20.5.1. Disabling shell registration	95
20.6. Fonts	95
20.6.1. Disabling automatic update of the fonts databases	95
21. Making your package work	96
21.1. General operation	96
21.1.1. How to pull in user-settable variables from <code>mk.conf</code>	96
21.1.2. User interaction	96
21.1.3. Handling licenses	97
21.1.3.1. Adding a package with a new license	97
21.1.3.2. Change to the license	98
21.1.4. Restricted packages	98
21.1.5. Handling dependencies	99
21.1.6. Handling conflicts with other packages	100
21.1.7. Packages that cannot or should not be built	101
21.1.8. Packages which should not be deleted, once installed	101
21.1.9. Handling packages with security problems	102
21.1.10. How to handle incrementing versions when fixing an existing package	102
21.1.11. Substituting variable text in the package files (the SUBST framework)	103
21.1.11.1. Choosing the time where the substitutions happen	104
21.1.11.2. Choosing the files where the substitutions happen	105
21.1.11.3. Choosing what to substitute	106
21.1.11.4. Other SUBST variables	106
21.2. The <i>fetch</i> phase	106
21.2.1. Packages whose distfiles aren't available for plain downloading	107
21.2.2. How to handle modified distfiles with the 'old' name	107
21.2.3. Packages hosted on github.com	107
21.2.3.1. Fetch based on a tagged release	107
21.2.3.2. Fetch based on a specific commit before the first release	108
21.2.3.3. Fetch based on a specific commit after a release	108
21.2.3.4. Fetch based on release	108
21.3. The <i>configure</i> phase	109
21.3.1. Shared libraries - libtool	109
21.3.2. Using libtool on GNU packages that already support libtool	110
21.3.3. GNU Autoconf/Automake	111
21.4. Programming languages	111
21.4.1. C, C++, and Fortran	112
21.4.2. Java	112
21.4.3. Go	112
21.4.4. Packages containing Perl scripts	113
21.4.5. Packages containing shell scripts	113
21.4.6. Other programming languages	113
21.5. The <i>build</i> phase	113
21.5.1. Compiling C and C++ code conditionally	113
21.5.1.1. C preprocessor macros to identify the operating system	114
21.5.1.2. C preprocessor macros to identify the hardware architecture	114
21.5.1.3. C preprocessor macros to identify the compiler	114

21.5.2. How to handle compiler bugs	115
21.5.3. No such file or directory	115
21.5.3.1. Headers from other packages	115
21.5.3.2. Headers generated during the build.....	116
21.5.3.3. Symlinks.....	116
21.5.3.4. Stale working directories.....	116
21.5.3.5. Other possible reasons.....	117
21.5.4. Undefined reference to “...”	117
21.5.4.1. Special issue: The SunPro compiler.....	117
21.5.5. Running out of memory	118
21.6. The <i>install</i> phase.....	118
21.6.1. Creating needed directories.....	118
21.6.2. Where to install documentation	118
21.6.3. Installing highscore files	119
21.6.4. Adding DESTDIR support to packages.....	119
21.6.5. Packages with hardcoded paths to other interpreters	120
21.6.6. Packages installing Perl modules	120
21.6.7. Packages installing info files.....	120
21.6.8. Packages installing man pages.....	121
21.6.9. Packages installing X11 fonts.....	121
21.6.10. Packages installing SGML or XML data.....	122
21.6.11. Packages installing extensions to the MIME database	122
21.6.12. Packages using intltool	122
21.6.13. Packages installing startup scripts	123
21.6.14. Packages installing TeX modules	123
21.6.15. Packages supporting running binaries in emulation	123
21.6.16. Packages installing hicolor icons	124
21.6.17. Packages installing desktop files.....	124
21.7. Marking packages as having problems.....	124
22. GNOME packaging and porting	125
22.1. Meta packages	125
22.2. Packaging a GNOME application	126
22.3. Updating GNOME to a newer version	127
22.4. Patching guidelines.....	128
23. Submitting and Committing.....	129
23.1. Submitting binary packages	129
23.2. Submitting source packages (for non-NetBSD-developers).....	129
23.3. General notes when adding, updating, or removing packages	129
23.4. Commit Messages	130
23.5. Committing: Adding a package to CVS.....	130
23.6. Updating a package to a newer version.....	131
23.7. Renaming a package in pkgsrc	131
23.8. Moving a package in pkgsrc.....	132
24. Frequently Asked Questions	133

III. The pkgsrc infrastructure internals	135
25. Design of the pkgsrc infrastructure	136
25.1. The meaning of variable definitions	136
25.2. Avoiding problems before they arise	136
25.3. Variable evaluation	137
25.3.1. At load time.....	137
25.3.2. At runtime	137
25.4. How can variables be specified?.....	137
25.5. Designing interfaces for Makefile fragments	138
25.5.1. Procedures with parameters	138
25.5.2. Actions taken on behalf of parameters.....	138
25.6. The order in which files are loaded	138
25.6.1. The order in <code>bsd.prefs.mk</code>	139
25.6.2. The order in <code>bsd.pkg.mk</code>	139
26. Regression tests	140
26.1. Running the regression tests	140
26.2. Adding a new regression test.....	140
26.2.1. Overridable functions.....	140
26.2.2. Helper functions.....	141
27. Porting pkgsrc	142
27.1. Porting pkgsrc to a new operating system	142
A. A simple example package: bison.....	143
A.1. files	143
A.1.1. Makefile	143
A.1.2. DESCR	143
A.1.3. PLIST.....	143
A.1.4. Checking a package with <code>pkglint</code>	144
A.2. Steps for building, installing, packaging	144
B. Security hardening.....	147
B.1. Mechanisms.....	147
B.1.1. Enabled by default	147
B.1.1.1. <code>PKGSRC_USE_FORTIFY</code>	147
B.1.1.2. <code>PKGSRC_USE_SSP</code>	147
B.1.1.3. <code>PKGSRC_MKPIE</code>	148
B.1.1.4. <code>PKGSRC_USE_RELRO</code>	148
B.1.2. Not enabled by default.....	148
B.1.2.1. <code>PKGSRC_MKREPRO</code>	149
B.1.2.2. <code>PKGSRC_USE_STACK_CHECK</code>	149
B.2. Caveats.....	149
B.2.1. Problems with <code>PKGSRC_MKPIE</code>	149
B.2.1.1. Packages failing to build	149
B.2.1.1.1. How to fix	149
B.2.1.2. Run-time crashes	150
B.2.1.3. Disabling <code>PKGSRC_MKPIE</code> on a per-package basis	150
B.2.2. Problems with <code>PKGSRC_USE_FORTIFY</code>	150
B.2.2.1. Packages failing to build	150
B.2.2.2. Run-time crashes	150

B.2.2.3. Optimization is required.....	150
B.2.2.4. Disabling FORTIFY on a per-package basis.....	150
B.2.3. Problems with PKGSRG_USE_RELRO	150
B.2.3.1. Performance impact.....	151
B.2.3.2. Run-time crashes	151
B.2.3.3. Disabling RELRO on a per-package basis	151
B.2.4. Problems with PKGSRG_USE_SSP	151
B.2.4.1. Packages failing to build	151
B.2.4.2. Run-time crashes	151
B.2.4.3. Performance impact.....	152
B.2.4.4. Disabling SSP on a per-package basis	152
B.3. Auditing the system.....	152
B.3.1. Checking for PIE	152
B.3.2. Checking for partial RELRO	153
B.3.3. Checking for full RELRO	153
B.3.4. Checking for SSP.....	153
C. Build logs	155
C.1. Building figlet.....	155
C.2. Packaging figlet	156
D. Directory layout of the pkgsrc FTP server	158
D.1. distfiles: The distributed source files.....	158
D.2. misc: Miscellaneous things	158
D.3. packages: Binary packages.....	158
D.4. reports: Bulk build reports.....	159
D.5. current, stable, pkgsrc-20xxQy: source packages.....	159
E. Help topics	160
F. Editing guidelines for the pkgsrc guide.....	173
F.1. Make targets	173
F.2. Procedure.....	173

List of Tables

1-1. Platforms supported by pkgsrc	2
12-1. Patching examples	43
22-1. PLIST handling for GNOME packages	126

Chapter 1.

What is pkgsrc?

1.1. Introduction

There is a lot of software freely available for Unix-based systems, which is usually available in form of the source code. Before such software can be used, it needs to be configured to the local system, compiled and installed, and this is exactly what The NetBSD Packages Collection (pkgsrc) does. pkgsrc also has some basic commands to handle binary packages, so that not every user has to build the packages for himself, which is a time-costly task.

pkgsrc currently contains several thousand packages, including:

- `www/apache24` - The Apache web server
- `www/firefox` - The Firefox web browser
- `meta-pkgs/gnome` - The GNOME Desktop Environment
- `meta-pkgs/kde4` - The K Desktop Environment

... just to name a few.

pkgsrc has built-in support for handling varying dependencies, such as pthreads and X11, and extended features such as IPv6 support on a range of platforms.

1.1.1. Why pkgsrc?

pkgsrc provides the following key features:

- Easy building of software from source as well as the creation and installation of binary packages. The source and latest patches are retrieved from a master or mirror download site, checksum verified, then built on your system. Support for binary-only distributions is available for both native platforms and NetBSD emulated platforms.
- All packages are installed in a consistent directory tree, including binaries, libraries, man pages and other documentation.
- Tracking of package dependencies automatically, including when performing updates, to ensure required packages are installed. The configuration files of various packages are handled automatically during updates, so local changes are preserved.
- Like NetBSD, pkgsrc is designed with portability in mind and consists of highly portable code. This allows the greatest speed of development when porting to a new platform. This portability also ensures that pkgsrc is *consistent across all platforms*.

- The installation prefix, acceptable software licenses, international encryption requirements and build-time options for a large number of packages are all set in a simple, central configuration file.
- The entire source (not including the distribution files) is freely available under a BSD license, so you may extend and adapt pkgsrc to your needs. Support for local packages and patches is available right out of the box, so you can configure it specifically for your environment.

The following principles are basic to pkgsrc:

- “It should only work if it’s right.” — That means, if a package contains bugs, it’s better to find them and to complain about them rather than to just install the package and hope that it works. There are numerous checks in pkgsrc that try to find such bugs: static analysis tools (`pkgtools/pkglint`), build-time checks (portability of shell scripts), and post-installation checks (installed files, references to shared libraries, script interpreters).
- “If it works, it should work everywhere” — Like NetBSD has been ported to many hardware architectures, pkgsrc has been ported to many operating systems. Care is taken that packages behave the same on all platforms.

1.1.2. Supported platforms

pkgsrc consists of both a source distribution and a binary distribution for these operating systems. After retrieving the required source or binaries, you can be up and running with pkgsrc in just minutes!

pkgsrc was derived from FreeBSD’s ports system, and initially developed for NetBSD only. Since then, pkgsrc has grown a lot, and now supports the following platforms:

Table 1-1. Platforms supported by pkgsrc

Platform	Date Support Added	Notes
NetBSD (https://www.NetBSD.org/)	Aug 1997	
Solaris (http://www.sun.com/software/solaris/)	Mar 1999	README.Solaris (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
Linux (https://www.kernel.org/)	Jun 1999	README.Linux (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
Darwin / Mac OS X / OS X / macOS (https://developer.apple.com/macos/)	Oct 2001	README.macOS (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
FreeBSD (https://www.freebsd.org/)	Nov 2002	README.FreeBSD (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
OpenBSD (https://www.openbsd.org/)	Nov 2002	README.OpenBSD (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)

Platform	Date Support Added	Notes
IRIX (https://www.sgi.com/software/irix/)	Dec 2002	README.IRIX (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/README.IRIX5.3) (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
BSD/OS	Dec 2003	
AIX (https://www-1.ibm.com/servers/aix/)	Dec 2003	README.AIX (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
Interix (https://www.microsoft.com/windows/sfu/) (Microsoft Windows Services for Unix)	Mar 2004	README.Interix (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
DragonFlyBSD (https://www.dragonflybsd.org/)	Oct 2004	
OSF/1 (http://www.tru64.org/)	Nov 2004	README.OSF1 (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
HP-UX (https://www.hp.com/products1/unix/)	Apr 2007	README.HPUX (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
Haiku (https://www.haiku-os.org/)	Sep 2010	README.Haiku (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
MirBSD (https://www.mirbsd.org/)	Jan 2011	
Minix3 (https://www.minix3.org/)	Nov 2011	README.Minix3 (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
Cygwin (https://cygwin.com/)	Mar 2013	README.Cygwin (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
GNU/kFreeBSD (https://www.debian.org/ports/kfreebsd-gnu/)	Jul 2013	README.GNUkFreeBSD (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)
Bitrig (https://www.bitrig.org/)	Jun 2014	README.Bitrig (https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc/)

1.2. Overview

This document is divided into three parts. The first, *The pkgsrc user's guide*, describes how one can use

one of the packages in the Package Collection, either by installing a precompiled binary package, or by building one's own copy using the NetBSD package system. The second part, *The pkgsrc developer's guide*, explains how to prepare a package so it can be easily built by other NetBSD users without knowing about the package's building details. The third part, *The pkgsrc infrastructure internals* is intended for those who want to understand how pkgsrc is implemented.

This document is available in various formats: HTML (index.html), PDF (pkgsrc.pdf), PS (pkgsrc.ps), TXT (pkgsrc.txt).

1.3. Terminology

There has been a lot of talk about “ports”, “packages”, etc. so far. Here is a description of all the terminology used within this document.

Package

A set of files and building instructions that describe what's necessary to build a certain piece of software using pkgsrc. Packages are traditionally stored under `/usr/pkgsrc`, but may be stored in any location, referred to as `PKGSRCDIR`.

The NetBSD package system

This is the former name of “pkgsrc”. It is part of the NetBSD operating system and can be bootstrapped to run on non-NetBSD operating systems as well. It handles building (compiling), installing, and removing of packages.

Distfile

This term describes the file or files that are provided by the author of the piece of software to distribute his work. All the changes necessary to build on NetBSD are reflected in the corresponding package. Usually the distfile is in the form of a compressed tar-archive, but other types are possible, too. Distfiles are usually stored below `/usr/pkgsrc/distfiles`.

Port

This is the term used by FreeBSD and OpenBSD people for what we call a package. In NetBSD terminology, “port” refers to a different architecture.

Precompiled/binary package

A set of binaries built with pkgsrc from a distfile and stuffed together in a single `.tgz` file so it can be installed on machines of the same machine architecture without the need to recompile. Packages are usually generated in `/usr/pkgsrc/packages`; there is also an archive on [ftp.NetBSD.org](ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/packages/) (<ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/packages/>).

Sometimes, this is referred to by the term “package” too, especially in the context of precompiled packages.

Program

The piece of software to be installed which will be constructed from all the files in the distfile by the actions defined in the corresponding package.

1.3.1. Roles involved in pkgsrc

pkgsrc users

The pkgsrc users are people who use the packages provided by pkgsrc. Typically they are system administrators. The people using the software that is inside the packages (maybe called “end users”) are not covered by the pkgsrc guide.

There are two kinds of pkgsrc users: Some only want to install pre-built binary packages. Others build the pkgsrc packages from source, either for installing them directly or for building binary packages themselves. For pkgsrc users Part I in *The pkgsrc guide* should provide all necessary documentation.

package maintainers

A package maintainer creates packages as described in Part II in *The pkgsrc guide*.

infrastructure developers

These people are involved in all those files that live in the `mk/` directory and below. Only these people should need to read through Part III in *The pkgsrc guide*, though others might be curious, too.

1.4. Typography

When giving examples for commands, shell prompts are used to show if the command should/can be issued as root, or if “normal” user privileges are sufficient. We use a `#` for root’s shell prompt, a `%` for users’ shell prompt, assuming they use the C-shell or tcsh and a `$` for bourne shell and derivatives.

I. The pkgsrc user's guide

Chapter 2.

Getting help

To get help when using pkgsrc, the definitive source is this document, the pkgsrc guide. If you don't find anything here, there are alternatives:

- The built-in pkgsrc help, which is available after bootstrapping pkgsrc. Run **bmake help topic=...** to get help for any topic, such as a variable name like `BUILD_DEFS`, a make target like **do-build**, a missing C or C++ function like **strcasecmp** or any other topic.

The available help topics are listed in Appendix E.

- To see the value of a single variable, run **bmake show-var VARNAME=x**.
- To see the values of the most common variables, run **bmake show-all**. These variables are grouped by topic. To see the variables for a single topic, run **bmake show-all-topic**, for example **bmake show-all-fetch**.
- The pkgsrc-users mailing list, to which you can subscribe (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/#pkgsrc-users>) and then ask your questions (<mailto:pkgsrc-users@NetBSD.org>).
- The #pkgsrc IRC channel, which is accessible via a web browser (<https://webchat.freenode.net/>) or by using a specialized chat program such as XChat (<http://xchat.org/>). Pick any user name and join the channel #pkgsrc.

Chapter 3.

Where to get pkgsrc and how to keep it up-to-date

Before you download and extract the files, you need to decide where you want to extract them. When using pkgsrc as root user, pkgsrc is usually installed in `/usr/pkgsrc`. You are though free to install the sources and binary packages wherever you want in your filesystem, provided that the pathname does not contain white-space or other characters that are interpreted specially by the shell and some other programs. A safe bet is to use only letters, digits, underscores and dashes.

3.1. Getting pkgsrc for the first time

Before you download any pkgsrc files, you should decide whether you want the *current* branch or the *stable* branch. The latter is forked on a quarterly basis from the current branch and only gets modified for security updates. The names of the stable branches are built from the year and the quarter, for example 2021Q4.

The second step is to decide *how* you want to download pkgsrc. You can get it as a tar file or via CVS. Both ways are described here.

Note that tar archive contains CVS working copy. Thus you can switch to using CVS at any later time.

3.1.1. As tar archive

The primary download location for all pkgsrc files is <https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/> or <ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/> (it points to the same location). There are a number of subdirectories for different purposes, which are described in detail in Appendix D.

The tar archive for the current branch is in the directory `current` and is called `pkgsrc.tar.gz` (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.gz>). It is autogenerated weekly.

To save download time we provide bzip2- and xz-compressed archives which are published at `pkgsrc.tar.bz2` (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.bz2>) and `pkgsrc.tar.xz` (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.xz>) respectively.

You can fetch the same files using FTP.

The tar file for the stable branch 2021Q4 is in the directory `pkgsrc-2021Q4` and is also called `pkgsrc.tar.gz` (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/pkgsrc-2021Q4/pkgsrc.tar.gz>).

To download the latest pkgsrc stable tarball, run:

```
$ ftp ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/pkgsrc-2021Q4/pkgsrc.tar.gz
```

If you prefer, you can also fetch it using "wget", "curl", or your web browser.

Then, extract it with:

```
$ tar -xzf pkgsrc.tar.gz -C /usr
```

This will create the directory `pkgsrc/` in `/usr/` and all the package source will be stored under `/usr/pkgsrc/`.

To download pkgsrc-current, run:

```
$ ftp ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.gz
```

3.1.2. Via anonymous CVS

To fetch a specific pkgsrc stable branch, run:

```
$ cd /usr && cvs -q -z2 -d anoncvs@anoncvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot checkout -r pkgsrc-2021Q4 -P pkgsrc
```

This will create the directory `pkgsrc/` in your `/usr/` directory and all the package source will be stored under `/usr/pkgsrc/`.

To fetch the pkgsrc current branch, run:

```
$ cd /usr && cvs -q -z2 -d anoncvs@anoncvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot checkout -P pkgsrc
```

Refer to the list of available mirrors (<https://www.NetBSD.org/mirrors/#anoncvs>) to choose a faster CVS mirror, if needed.

If you get error messages from `rsh`, you need to set `CVS_RSH` variable. E.g.:

```
$ cd /usr && env CVS_RSH=ssh cvs -q -z2 -d anoncvs@anoncvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot checkout -P pkgsrc
```

Refer to documentation on your command shell how to set `CVS_RSH=ssh` permanently. For Bourne shells, you can set it in your `.profile` or better globally in `/etc/profile`:

```
# set CVS remote shell command
CVS_RSH=ssh
export CVS_RSH
```

By default, CVS doesn't do things like most people would expect it to do. But there is a way to convince CVS, by creating a file called `.cvsrc` in your home directory and saving the following lines to it. This file will save you lots of headache and some bug reports, so we strongly recommend it. You can find an explanation of this file in the CVS documentation.

```
# recommended CVS configuration file from the pkgsrc guide
cvs -q
checkout -P
update -dP
diff -upN
rdiff -u
release -d
```

3.2. Keeping pkgsrc up-to-date

The preferred way to keep pkgsrc up-to-date is via CVS (which also works if you have first installed it via a tar file). It saves bandwidth and hard disk activity, compared to downloading the tar file again.

3.2.1. Via tar files

Warning

When updating from a tar file, you first need to completely remove the old pkgsrc directory. Otherwise those files that have been removed from pkgsrc in the mean time will not be removed on your local disk, resulting in inconsistencies. When removing the old files, any changes that you have done to the pkgsrc files will be lost after updating. Therefore updating via CVS is strongly recommended.

Note that by default the distfiles and the binary packages are saved in the pkgsrc tree, so don't forget to rescue them before updating. You can also configure pkgsrc to store distfiles and packages in directories outside the pkgsrc tree by setting the `DISTDIR` and `PACKAGES` variables. See Chapter 6 for the details.

To update pkgsrc from a tar file, download the tar file as explained above. Then, make sure that you have not made any changes to the files in the pkgsrc directory. Remove the pkgsrc directory and extract the new tar file. Done.

3.2.2. Via CVS

To update pkgsrc via CVS, change to the `pkgsrc` directory and run `cvs`:

```
$ cd /usr/pkgsrc && cvs update -dP
```

If you get error messages from `rsh`, you need to set `CVS_RSH` variable as described above. E.g.:

```
$ cd /usr/pkgsrc && env CVS_RSH=ssh cvs up -dP
```

3.2.2.1. Switching between different pkgsrc branches

When updating pkgsrc, the CVS program keeps track of the branch you selected. But if you, for whatever reason, want to switch from the stable branch to the current one, you can do it by adding the option `-A` after the `“update”` keyword. To switch from the current branch back to the stable branch, add the `“-rpkgsrc-2021Q4”` option.

3.2.2.2. What happens to my changes when updating?

When you update pkgsrc, the CVS program will only touch those files that are registered in the CVS repository. That means that any packages that you created on your own will stay unmodified. If you change files that are managed by CVS, later updates will try to merge your changes with those that have been done by others. See the CVS manual, chapter `“update”` for details.

Chapter 4.

Using pkgsrc on systems other than NetBSD

4.1. Binary distribution

See Section 5.1.

4.2. Bootstrapping pkgsrc

pkgsrc can be bootstrapped for use in two different modes: privileged and unprivileged one. In unprivileged mode in contrast to privileged one all programs are installed under one particular user and cannot utilise privileged operations (packages don't create special users and all special file permissions like `setuid` are ignored).

Installing the bootstrap kit from source should be as simple as:

```
# env CVS_RSH=ssh cvs -d anoncvs@anoncvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot checkout -P pkgsrc
# cd pkgsrc/bootstrap
# ./bootstrap
```

To bootstrap in unprivileged mode pass “--unprivileged” flag to **bootstrap**

By default, in privileged mode pkgsrc uses `/usr/pkg` for *prefix* where programs will be installed in, and `/usr/pkg/pkgdb` for the package database directory where pkgsrc will do its internal bookkeeping, `/var` is used as *varbase*, where packages install their persistent data. In unprivileged mode pkgsrc uses `~/pkg` for *prefix*, `~/pkg/pkgdb` for the package database, and `~/pkg/var` for *varbase*.

You can change default layout using command-line arguments. Run “`./bootstrap --help`” to get details.

Note: The bootstrap installs a **bmake** tool. Use this **bmake** when building via pkgsrc. For examples in this guide, use **bmake** instead of “make”.

Note: It is possible to bootstrap multiple instances of pkgsrc using non-intersecting directories. Use **bmake** corresponding to the installation you're working with to build and install packages.

Chapter 5.

Using pkgsrc

Basically, there are two ways of using pkgsrc. The first is to only install the package tools and to use binary packages that someone else has prepared. This is the “pkg” in pkgsrc. The second way is to install the “src” of pkgsrc, too. Then you are able to build your own packages, and you can still use binary packages from someone else.

5.1. Using binary packages

On the cdn.NetBSD.org (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/>) site and mirrors, there are collections of binary packages, ready to be installed. These binary packages have been built using the default settings for the directories, that is:

- `/usr/pkg` for LOCALBASE, where most of the files are installed,
- `/usr/pkg/etc` for configuration files,
- `/var` for VARBASE, where those files are installed that may change after installation.

If you cannot use these directories for whatever reasons (maybe because you’re not root), you cannot use these binary packages, but have to build the packages yourself, which is explained in Section 4.2.

5.1.1. Finding binary packages

To install binary packages, you first need to know from where to get them. The first place where you should look is on the main pkgsrc CDN in the directory `/pub/pkgsrc/packages` (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/packages/>).

This directory contains binary packages for multiple platforms. First, select your operating system. (Ignore the directories with version numbers attached to it, they just exist for legacy reasons.) Then, select your hardware architecture, and in the third step, the OS version and the “version” of pkgsrc.

In this directory, you often find a file called `bootstrap.tar.gz` which contains the package management tools. If the file is missing, it is likely that your operating system already provides those tools. Download the file and extract it in the `/` directory. It will create the directories `/usr/pkg` (containing the tools for managing binary packages and the database of installed packages).

5.1.2. Installing binary packages

In the directory from the last section, there is a subdirectory called `All/`, which contains all the binary packages that are available for the platform, excluding those that may not be distributed via HTTP or FTP.

To install packages directly from an FTP or HTTP server, run the following commands in a Bourne-compatible shell (be sure to **su** to root first):

```
# PATH="/usr/pkg/sbin:/usr/pkg/bin:$PATH"
# PKG_PATH="https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/packages"
# PKG_PATH="$PKG_PATH/OPYSYS/ARCH/VERSIONS/All/"
# export PATH PKG_PATH
# pkg_add pkgin
```

Instead of URLs, you can also use local paths, for example if you are installing from a set of CDROMs, DVDs or an NFS-mounted repository. If you want to install packages from multiple sources, you can separate them by a semicolon in `PKG_PATH`.

After these preparations, installing a package is very easy:

```
# pkgin search nginx
nginx-1.19.6      Lightweight HTTP server and mail proxy server
nginx-1.18.0nb8   Lightweight HTTP server and mail proxy server
# pkgin install zsh nginx-1.19.6 vim
```

Note that **pkgin** is a user-friendly frontend to the **pkg_*** tools.

Any prerequisite packages needed to run the package in question will be installed, too, assuming they are present in the repository.

After you've installed packages, be sure to have `/usr/pkg/bin` and `/usr/pkg/sbin` in your `PATH` so you can actually start the just installed program.

5.1.3. Updating packages

To update binary packages, it is recommended that you use **pkgin upgrade**. This will compare the remote package repository to your locally installed packages and safely replace any older packages.

Note that pkgsrc is released as quarterly branches. If you are updating to a newer quarterly branch of pkgsrc, you may need to adjust the repository in `/usr/pkg/etc/pkgin/repositories.conf`.

5.1.4. Deinstalling packages

To deinstall a package, it does not matter whether it was installed from source code or from a binary package. Neither the **pkgin** or the **pkg_delete** command need to know.

To delete a package, you can just run **pkgin remove *package-name***. The package name can be given with or without version number.

5.1.5. Getting information about installed packages

The **pkg_info** shows information about installed packages or binary package files. As with other management tools, it works with packages installed from source or binaries.

5.1.6. Checking for security vulnerabilities in installed packages

The pkgsrc Security Team and Packages Groups maintain a list of known vulnerabilities to packages which are (or have been) included in pkgsrc. The list is available from the NetBSD CDN at <https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/NetBSD/packages/vulns/pkg-vulnerabilities>.

Please note that not every "vulnerability" with a CVE assignment is exploitable in every configuration. Some bugs are marked as active simply because a fix was not marked as such. Operating system specific hardening and mitigation features may also reduce the impact of bugs.

Through **pkg_admin fetch-pkg-vulnerabilities**, this list can be downloaded automatically, and a security audit of all packages installed on a system can take place.

There are two components to auditing. The first step, **pkg_admin fetch-pkg-vulnerabilities**, is for downloading the list of vulnerabilities from the NetBSD FTP site. The second step, **pkg_admin audit**, checks to see if any of your installed packages are vulnerable. If a package is vulnerable, you will see output similar to the following:

```
Package samba-2.0.9 has a local-root-shell vulnerability, see
  https://www.samba.org/samba/whatsnew/macroexploit.html
```

You may wish to have the vulnerabilities (<https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/vulnerabilities>) file downloaded daily so that it remains current. This may be done by adding an appropriate entry to the root users crontab(5) entry. For example the entry

```
# Download vulnerabilities file
0 3 * * * /usr/pkg/sbin/pkg_admin fetch-pkg-vulnerabilities >/dev/null 2>&1
# Audit the installed packages and email results to root
9 3 * * * /usr/pkg/sbin/pkg_admin audit |mail -s "Installed package audit result" \
  root >/dev/null 2>&1
```

will update the vulnerability list every day at 3AM, followed by an audit at 3:09AM. The result of the audit are then emailed to root. On NetBSD this may be accomplished instead by adding the following line to `/etc/daily.conf`:

```
fetch_pkg_vulnerabilities=YES
```

to fetch the vulnerability list from the daily security script. The system is set to audit the packages by default but can be set explicitly, if desired (not required), by adding the following line to `/etc/security.conf`:

```
check_pkg_vulnerabilities=YES
```

see `daily.conf(5)` and `security.conf(5)` for more details.

5.1.7. Finding if newer versions of your installed packages are in pkgsrc

Install `pkgtools/lintpkgsrc` and run **lintpkgsrc** with the `-i` argument to check if any packages are stale, e.g.

```
% lintpkgsrc -i
...
Version mismatch: 'tcsh' 6.09.00 vs 6.10.00
```

5.1.8. Other administrative functions

The `pkg_admin` executes various administrative functions on the package system.

5.2. Building packages from source

After obtaining pkgsrc, the `pkgsrc` directory now contains a set of packages, organized into categories. You can browse the online index of packages, or run **make readme** from the `pkgsrc` directory to build local `README.html` files for all packages, viewable with any web browser such as `www/lynx` or `www/firefox`.

The default *prefix* for installed packages is `/usr/pkg`. If you wish to change this, you should do so by setting `LOCALBASE` in `mk.conf`. You should not try to use multiple different `LOCALBASE` definitions on the same system (inside a chroot is an exception).

The rest of this chapter assumes that the package is already in pkgsrc. If it is not, see Part II in *The pkgsrc guide* for instructions how to create your own packages.

5.2.1. Requirements

To build packages from source, you need a working C compiler. On NetBSD, you need to install the “comp” and the “text” distribution sets. If you want to build X11-related packages, the “xbase” and “xcomp” distribution sets are required, too.

5.2.2. Fetching distfiles

The first step for building a package is downloading the distfiles (i.e. the unmodified source). If they have not yet been downloaded, pkgsrc will fetch them automatically.

If you have all files that you need in the `distfiles` directory, you don't need to connect. If the distfiles are on CD-ROM, you can mount the CD-ROM on `/cdrom` and add:

```
DISTDIR=/cdrom/pkgsrc/distfiles
```

to your `mk.conf`.

By default a list of distribution sites will be randomly intermixed to prevent huge load on servers which holding popular packages (for example, SourceForge.net mirrors). Thus, every time when you need to fetch yet another distfile all the mirrors will be tried in new (random) order. You can turn this feature off by setting `MASTER_SORT_RANDOM=NO` (for `PKG_DEVELOPERS` it's already disabled).

You can overwrite some of the major distribution sites to fit to sites that are close to your own. By setting one or two variables you can modify the order in which the master sites are accessed. `MASTER_SORT`

contains a whitespace delimited list of domain suffixes. `MASTER_SORT_REGEX` is even more flexible, it contains a whitespace delimited list of regular expressions. It has higher priority than `MASTER_SORT`. Have a look at `pkgsrc/mk/defaults/mk.conf` to find some examples. This may save some of your bandwidth and time.

You can change these settings either in your shell's environment, or, if you want to keep the settings, by editing the `mk.conf` file, and adding the definitions there.

If a package depends on many other packages (such as `meta-pkgs/kde4`), the build process may alternate between periods of downloading source, and compiling. To ensure you have all the source downloaded initially you can run the command:

```
% make fetch-list | sh
```

which will output and run a set of shell commands to fetch the necessary files into the `distfiles` directory. You can also choose to download the files manually.

5.2.3. How to build and install

Once the software has downloaded, any patches will be applied, then it will be compiled for you. This may take some time depending on your computer, and how many other packages the software depends on and their compile time.

Note: If using bootstrap or pkgsrc on a non-NetBSD system, use the pkgsrc **bmake** command instead of “make” in the examples in this guide.

For example, type

```
% cd misc/figlet
% make
```

at the shell prompt to build the various components of the package.

The next stage is to actually install the newly compiled program onto your system. Do this by entering:

```
% make install
```

while you are still in the directory for whatever package you are installing.

Installing the package on your system may require you to be root. However, pkgsrc has a *just-in-time-su* feature, which allows you to only become root for the actual installation step.

That's it, the software should now be installed and setup for use. You can now enter:

```
% make clean
```

to remove the compiled files in the work directory, as you shouldn't need them any more. If other packages were also added to your system (dependencies) to allow your program to compile, you can tidy these up also with the command:

```
% make clean-depends
```

Taking the figlet utility as an example, we can install it on our system by building as shown in Appendix C.

The program is installed under the default root of the packages tree - `/usr/pkg`. Should this not conform to your tastes, set the `LOCALBASE` variable in your environment, and it will use that value as the root of your packages tree. So, to use `/usr/local`, set `LOCALBASE=/usr/local` in your environment. Please note that you should use a directory which is dedicated to packages and not shared with other programs (i.e., do not try and use `LOCALBASE=/usr`). Also, you should not try to add any of your own files or directories (such as `src/`, `obj/`, or `pkgsrc/`) below the `LOCALBASE` tree. This is to prevent possible conflicts between programs and other files installed by the package system and whatever else may have been installed there.

Some packages look in `mk.conf` to alter some configuration options at build time. Have a look at `pkgsrc/mk/defaults/mk.conf` to get an overview of what will be set there by default. Environment variables such as `LOCALBASE` can be set in `mk.conf` to save having to remember to set them each time you want to use `pkgsrc`.

Occasionally, people want to “look under the covers” to see what is going on when a package is building or being installed. This may be for debugging purposes, or out of simple curiosity. A number of utility values have been added to help with this.

1. If you invoke the `make(1)` command with `PKG_DEBUG_LEVEL=2`, then a huge amount of information will be displayed. For example,

```
make patch PKG_DEBUG_LEVEL=2
```

will show all the commands that are invoked, up to and including the “patch” stage.

2. If you want to know the value of a certain `make(1)` definition, then the `VARNAME` definition should be used, in conjunction with the `show-var` target. e.g. to show the expansion of the `make(1)` variable `LOCALBASE`:

```
% make show-var VARNAME=LOCALBASE
/usr/pkg
%
```

If you want to install a binary package that you’ve either created yourself (see next section), that you put into `pkgsrc/packages` manually or that is located on a remote FTP server, you can use the “bin-install” target. This target will install a binary package - if available - via `pkg_add(1)`, else do a **make package**. The list of remote FTP sites searched is kept in the variable `BINPKG_SITES`, which defaults to `ftp.NetBSD.org`. Any flags that should be added to `pkg_add(1)` can be put into `BIN_INSTALL_FLAGS`. See `pkgsrc/mk/defaults/mk.conf` for more details.

A final word of warning: If you set up a system that has a non-standard setting for `LOCALBASE`, be sure to set that before any packages are installed, as you cannot use several directories for the same purpose. Doing so will result in `pkgsrc` not being able to properly detect your installed packages, and fail miserably. Note also that precompiled binary packages are usually built with the default `LOCALBASE` of `/usr/pkg`, and that you should *not* install any if you use a non-standard `LOCALBASE`.

Chapter 6.

Configuring pkgsrc

The whole pkgsrc system is configured in a single file, usually called `mk.conf`. In which directory pkgsrc looks for that file depends on the installation. On NetBSD, when you use `make(1)` from the base system, it is in the directory `/etc/`. In all other cases the default location is `${PREFIX}/etc/`, depending on where you told the bootstrap program to install the binary packages.

The format of the configuration file is that of the usual BSD-style `Makefiles`. The whole pkgsrc configuration is done by setting variables in this file. Note that you can define all kinds of variables, and no special error checking (for example for spelling mistakes) takes place.

6.1. General configuration

The following variables apply to all pkgsrc packages. A complete list of the variables that can be configured by the user is available in `mk/defaults/mk.conf`, together with some comments that describe each variable's intent.

- **LOCALBASE:** Where packages will be installed. The default is `/usr/pkg`. Do not mix binary packages with different `LOCALBASE`s!
- **CROSSBASE:** Where “cross” category packages will be installed. The default is `${LOCALBASE}/cross`.
- **X11BASE:** Where X11 is installed on the system. The default is `/usr/X11R7`.
- **DISTDIR:** Where to store the downloaded copies of the original source distributions used for building pkgsrc packages. The default is `${PKGSRC_DIR}/distfiles`.
- **PKG_DBDIR:** Where the database about installed packages is stored. The default is `/usr/pkg/pkgdb`.
- **MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE:** If set, override the packages' `MASTER_SITES` with this value.
- **MASTER_SITE_BACKUP:** Backup location(s) for distribution files and patch files if not found locally or in `${MASTER_SITES}` or `${PATCH_SITES}` respectively. The defaults is `ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/${DIST_SUBDIR}/`.
- **BINPKG_SITES:** List of sites carrying binary pkgs. `rel` and `arch` are replaced with OS release (“2.0”, etc.) and architecture (“mipsel”, etc.).
- **ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES:** List of acceptable licenses. License names are case-sensitive. Whenever you try to build a package whose license is not in this list, you will get an error message. If the license condition is simple enough, the error message will include specific instructions on how to change this variable.

6.2. Variables affecting the build process

- **PACKAGES:** The top level directory for the binary packages. The default is `${PKGSRCDIR}/packages`.
- **WRKOBJDIR:** The top level directory where, if defined, the separate working directories will get created, and symbolically linked to from `${WRKDIR}` (see below). This is useful for building packages on several architectures, then `${PKGSRCDIR}` can be NFS-mounted while `${WRKOBJDIR}` is local to every architecture. (It should be noted that `PKGSRCDIR` should not be set by the user — it is an internal definition which refers to the root of the pkgsrc tree. It is possible to have many pkgsrc tree instances.)
- **LOCALPATCHES:** Directory for local patches that aren't part of pkgsrc. See Section 12.3 for more information.
- **PKGMAKECONF:** Location of the `mk.conf` file used by a package's BSD-style Makefile. If this is not set, `MAKECONF` is set to `/dev/null` to avoid picking up settings used by builds in `/usr/src`.

6.3. Variables affecting the installation process

- **PKGSRC_KEEP_BIN_PKGS:** By default, binary packages of built packages are preserved in `${PACKAGES}/All`. Setting this variable to "no" prevents this.

Packages have to support installation into a subdirectory of `WRKDIR`. This allows a package to be built, before the actual filesystem is touched. `DESTDIR` support exists in two variations:

- Basic `DESTDIR` support means that the package installation and packaging is still run as root.
- Full `DESTDIR` support can run the complete build, installation and packaging as normal user. Root privileges are only needed to add packages.

With basic `DESTDIR` support, **make clean** needs to be run as root.

Considering the `foo/bar` package, `DESTDIR` full support can be tested using the following commands

```
$ id
uid=1000(myusername) gid=100(users) groups=100(users),0(wheel)
$ mkdir $HOME/packages
$ cd $PKGSRCDIR/foo/bar
```

Verify `DESTDIR` full support, no root privileges should be needed

```
$ make stage-install
```

Create a package without root privileges

```
$ make PACKAGES=$HOME/packages package
```

For the following command, you must be able to gain root privileges using `su(1)`

```
$ make PACKAGES=$HOME/packages install
```

Then, as a simple user

```
$ make clean
```

6.4. Selecting and configuring the compiler

6.4.1. Selecting the compiler

By default, pkgsrc will use GCC to build packages. This may be overridden by setting the following variables in `/etc/mk.conf`:

`PKGSRC_COMPILER`:

This is a list of values specifying the chain of compilers to invoke when building packages. Valid values are:

- `ccc`: Compaq C Compilers (Tru64)
- `ccache`: compiler cache (chainable)
- `clang`: Clang C and Objective-C compiler
- `distcc`: distributed C/C++ (chainable)
- `f2c`: Fortran 77 to C compiler (chainable)
- `icc`: Intel C++ Compiler (Linux)
- `ido`: SGI IRIS Development Option cc (IRIX 5)
- `gcc`: GNU C/C++ Compiler
- `hp`: HP-UX C/aC++ compilers
- `mipspro`: Silicon Graphics, Inc. MIPSpro (n32/n64)
- `mipspro-unicode`: Silicon Graphics, Inc. MIPSpro (o32)
- `sunpro`: Sun Microsystems, Inc. WorkShip/Forte/Sun ONE Studio
- `xlc`: IBM's XL C/C++ compiler suite

The default is `gcc`. You can use `ccache` and/or `distcc` with an appropriate `PKGSRC_COMPILER` setting, e.g. `ccache gcc`. This variable should always be terminated with a value for a real compiler. Note that only one real compiler should be listed (e.g. `sunpro gcc` is not allowed).

`GCC_REQD`:

This specifies the minimum version of GCC to use when building packages. If the system GCC doesn't satisfy this requirement, then pkgsrc will build and install one of the GCC packages to use instead.

`PYTHON_VERSION_DEFAULT:`

Specifies which version of python to use when several options are available.

`PKGSRC_FORTRAN:`

Specifies the Fortran compiler to use. The default is `gfortran`.

`GFORTRAN_VERSION:`

If `PKGSRC_FORTRAN= gfortran` is used, this option specifies which version to use.

6.4.2. Additional flags to the compiler (`CFLAGS`)

If you wish to set the `CFLAGS` variable, please make sure to use the `+=` operator instead of the `=` operator:

```
CFLAGS+=      -your -flags
```

Using `CFLAGS=` (i.e. without the “+”) may lead to problems with packages that need to add their own flags. You may want to take a look at the `devel/cpuflags` package if you’re interested in optimization specifically for the current CPU.

6.4.3. Additional flags to the linker (`LDFLAGS`)

If you want to pass flags to the linker, both in the configure step and the build step, you can do this in two ways. Either set `LDFLAGS` or `LIBS`. The difference between the two is that `LIBS` will be appended to the command line, while `LDFLAGS` come earlier. `LDFLAGS` is pre-loaded with `rpath` settings for ELF machines depending on the setting of `USE_IMAKE` or the inclusion of `mk/x11.buildlink3.mk`. As with `CFLAGS`, if you do not wish to override these settings, use the `+=` operator:

```
LDFLAGS+=      -your -linkerflags
```

6.5. Developer/advanced settings

- `PKG_DEVELOPER`: Run some sanity checks that package developers want:
 - make sure patches apply with zero fuzz
 - run `check-shlibs` to see that all binaries will find their shared libs.
- `PKG_DEBUG_LEVEL`: The level of debugging output which is displayed whilst making and installing the package. The default value for this is 0, which will not display the commands as they are executed (normal, default, quiet operation); the value 1 will display all shell commands before their invocation, and the value 2 will display both the shell commands before their invocation, as well as their actual execution progress with `set -x`.

6.6. Selecting Build Options

Some packages have build time options, usually to select between different dependencies, enable optional support for big dependencies or enable experimental features.

To see which options, if any, a package supports, and which options are mutually exclusive, run **make show-options**, for example:

```
The following options are supported by this package:
    ssl          Enable SSL support.
Exactly one of the following gecko options is required:
    firefox      Use firefox as gecko rendering engine.
    mozilla      Use mozilla as gecko rendering engine.
At most one of the following database options may be selected:
    mysql        Enable support for MySQL database.
    pgsql        Enable support for PostgreSQL database.

These options are enabled by default: firefox
These options are currently enabled: mozilla ssl
```

The following variables can be defined in `mk.conf` to select which options to enable for a package: `PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS`, which can be used to select or disable options for all packages that support them, and `PKG_OPTIONS.pkgbase`, which can be used to select or disable options specifically for package `pkgbase`. Options listed in these variables are selected, options preceded by “-” are disabled. A few examples:

```
$ grep "PKG.*OPTION" mk.conf
PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS=    -arts -dvdread -esound
PKG_OPTIONS.kdebase=    debug -sasl
PKG_OPTIONS.apache=     suexec
```

It is important to note that options that were specifically suggested by the package maintainer must be explicitly removed if you do not wish to include the option. If you are unsure you can view the current state with **make show-options**.

The following settings are consulted in the order given, and the last setting that selects or disables an option is used:

1. the default options as suggested by the package maintainer
2. the options implied by the settings of legacy variables (see below)
3. `PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS`
4. `PKG_OPTIONS.pkgbase`

For groups of mutually exclusive options, the last option selected is used, all others are automatically disabled. If an option of the group is explicitly disabled, the previously selected option, if any, is used. It is an error if no option from a required group of options is selected, and building the package will fail.

Before the options framework was introduced, build options were selected by setting a variable (often named `USE_FOO`) in `mk.conf` for each option. To ease transition to the options framework for the user, these legacy variables are converted to the appropriate options setting (`PKG_OPTIONS.pkgbase`) automatically. A warning is issued to prompt the user to update `mk.conf` to use the options framework directly. Support for the legacy variables will be removed eventually.

Chapter 7.

Creating binary packages

7.1. Building a single binary package

Once you have built and installed a package, you can create a *binary package* which can be installed on another system with `pkg_add(1)`. This saves having to build the same package on a group of hosts and wasting CPU time. It also provides a simple means for others to install your package, should you distribute it.

To create a binary package, change into the appropriate directory in `pkgsrc`, and run **make package**:

```
$ cd misc/figlet
$ make package
```

This will build and install your package (if not already done), and then build a binary package from what was installed. You can then use the **pkg_*** tools to manipulate it. Binary packages are created by default in `/usr/pkgsrc/packages`, in the form of a gzipped tar file. See Section C.2 for a continuation of the above `misc/figlet` example.

See Chapter 23 for information on how to submit such a binary package.

7.2. Settings for creation of binary packages

See Section 13.17.

Chapter 8.

Creating binary packages for everything in pkgsrc (bulk builds)

For a number of reasons, you may want to build binary packages for a large selected set of packages in pkgsrc, or even for all pkgsrc packages. For instance, when you have multiple machines that should run the same software, it is wasted time if they all build their packages themselves from source. Or you may want to build a list of packages you want and check them before deploying onto production systems. There is a way of getting a set of binary packages: the bulk build system, or pbulk ("p" stands for "parallel"). This chapter describes how to set it up.

8.1. Preparations

First of all, you have to decide whether you build all packages or a limited set of them. Full bulk builds usually consume a lot more resources, both space and time, than builds for some practical sets of packages. A number of particularly heavy packages exist that are not actually interesting to a wide audience. (The approximate resource consumption for a full bulk build is given in section Section 8.3.) For limited bulk builds you need to make a list of packages you want to build. Note that all their dependencies will be built, so you don't need to track them manually.

During bulk builds various packages are installed and deinstalled in `/usr/pkg` (or whatever `LOCALBASE` is), so make sure that you don't need any package during the builds. Essentially, you should provide a fresh system, either a chroot environment or something even more restrictive, depending on what the operating system provides, or dedicate the whole physical machine. As a useful side effect this makes sure that bulk builds cannot break anything in your system. There have been numerous cases where certain packages tried to install files outside the `LOCALBASE` or wanted to edit some files in `/etc`.

8.2. Running a bulk build

Running a bulk build works roughly as follows:

- First, build the pbulk infrastructure in a fresh pkgsrc location.
- Then, build each of the packages from a clean installation directory using the infrastructure.

8.2.1. Configuration

To simplify configuration, we provide the helper script `mk/pbulk/pbulk.sh`.

In order to use it, prepare a clear system (real one, chroot environment, jail, zone, virtual machine). Configure network access to fetch distribution files. Create a user with name "pbulk".

Fetch and extract pkgsrc. Use a command like one of these:

```
# (cd /usr && ftp -o - https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.gz | tar -zxf-)
# (cd /usr && fetch -o - https://cdn.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/current/pkgsrc.tar.gz | tar -zxf-)
# (cd /usr && cvs -Q -z3 -d anoncvs@anoncvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot get -P pkgsrc)
```

Or any other way that fits (e.g., curl, wget).

Deploy and configure pbulk tools, e.g.:

```
# sh pbulk.sh -n # use native make, no bootstrap kit needed (for use on NetBSD)
# sh pbulk.sh -n -c mk.conf.frag # native, apply settings from given mk.conf fragment
# sh pbulk.sh -nlc mk.conf.frag # native, apply settings, configure for limited build
```

Note: `mk.conf.frag` is a fragment of `mk.conf` that contains settings you want to apply to packages you build. For instance,

```
PKG_DEVELOPER=      yes      # perform more checks
X11_TYPE=           modular  # use pkgsrc X11
SKIP_LICENSE_CHECK= yes      # accept all licences (useful
                           # when building all packages)
```

If configured for limited list, replace the list in `/usr/pbulk/etc/pbulk.list` with your list of packages, one per line without empty lines or comments. E.g.:

```
www/firefox
mail/thunderbird
misc/libreoffice4
```

At this point you can also review configuration in `/usr/pbulk/etc` and make final amendments, if wanted.

Start it:

```
# /usr/pbulk/bin/bulkbuild
```

After it finishes, you'll have `/mnt` filled with distribution files, binary packages, and reports, plain text summary in `/mnt/bulklog/meta/report.txt`

Note: The `pbulk.sh` script does not cover all possible use cases. While being ready to run, it serves as a good starting point to understand and build more complex setups. The script is kept small enough for better understanding.

Note: The `pbulk.sh` script supports running unprivileged bulk build and helps configuring distributed bulk builds. Distributed bulk builds support either building in worker chroots (each node is a path to a different chroot) that replicate the target system, including the `pbulk` prefix, or remote machines (each node is an IP address that must be accessible over SSH without a password).

8.3. Requirements of a full bulk build

A complete bulk build requires lots of disk space. Some of the disk space can be read-only, some other must be writable. Some can be on remote filesystems (such as NFS) and some should be local. Some can be temporary filesystems, others must survive a sudden reboot.

- 70 GB for the distfiles (read-write, remote, temporary)
- 60 GB for the binary packages (read-write, remote, permanent)
- 1 GB for the pkgsrc tree (read-only, remote, permanent)
- 5 GB for `LOCALBASE` (read-write, local, temporary)
- 10 GB for the log files (read-write, remote, permanent)
- 5 GB for temporary files (read-write, local, temporary)

8.4. Bulk build variants

To ensure that pkgsrc packages work in different configurations, it makes sense to run non-default bulk builds from time to time. This section lists some ideas for bulk builds that intentionally let packages fail if they don't follow the pkgsrc style.

8.4.1. Detect unknown configure options

Add the following line to `mk.conf`.

```
GNU_CONFIGURE_STRICT= yes
```

When a package fails this additional check, the most common cause is that the configure option was valid for an older version of the package but does not apply anymore. In that case, just remove it.

8.4.2. Detect classes of bugs by forcing compiler warnings

The job of a compiler is not restricted to producing executable code, most compilers also detect typical programming mistakes. The pkgsrc compiler wrappers make it easy to force compiler options when the package is built. This can be used to find typical bugs across all packages that are in pkgsrc. By reporting these bugs upstream, the packages will be more reliable with the next updates.

Add some of the following lines to `mk.conf`:

```
CFLAGS+=      -Werror=char-subscripts
CFLAGS+=      -Werror=implicit-function-declaration
```

When a package fails to build using these stricter compiler options, document the circumstances in which the compiler produced the error message. This includes:

- The platform (`MACHINE_PLATFORM`)
- The source file
- An excerpt of the code. GCC and Clang already do this as part of the diagnostic.
- The exact error message from the compiler.

If a package produces these error messages, but the package is fine, record this in your local `mk.conf`, like this, to skip this check in the next builds:

```
.if ${PKGPATH} == category/package
# Version ${VERSION} failed on ${MACHINE_PLATFORM}:
# error message
# code
# Reason why the code does not need to be fixed.
BUILDLINK_TRANSFORM+=    rm:-Werror=char-subscripts
.endif
```

If the error messages from the compiler are valid and the code needs to be fixed, prepare a local patch (see `LOCALPATCHES`) and report the bug to the upstream authors of the package, providing them with the information you collected above.

Patches that are not essential for the package to work should only be reported upstream but not committed to pkgsrc, to make future updates easier.

8.4.3. Force compiler options only in the build phase

When adding custom compiler flags via `CFLAGS`, these apply to all phases of the package build process. Especially in the configure phase, adding `-Werror` leads to wrong decisions. The GNU configure scripts feed many small test programs to the C compiler to see whether certain headers are available, functions are defined in a library and programs can be run. In many cases these programs would not survive a strict compiler run with `-Wall -Wextra -Werror`.

The pkgsrc infrastructure is flexible enough to support compiler options being added between the `configure` and `build` phases. It's a little more complicated than the other examples in this section but still easy enough.

The basic idea is to use the pkgsrc compiler wrapper to inject the desired compiler options. The compiler wrapper's original task is to hide unwanted directories of include files and to normalize compiler options. It does this by wrapping the compiler command and rewriting the command line. To see this in action, run **make patch** in a package directory and examine the `work/.cwrappers/config` directory. It contains individual configurations for the C compiler and the related tools. The plan is to find a hook between the configure and build phases, and to modify these configuration files at that point.

To find this hook, have a look at `mk/build/build.mk`, which contains among others the `pre-build-checks-hook`. The word `checks` doesn't quite fit, but the `pre-build-hook` sounds good enough.

The code to be included in `mk.conf` is:

```
# Just a few example options.
BUILD_ONLY_CFLAGS=      -Wall -Werror -O2 -DTEMPDIR='"/tmp"'

.if ${BUILD_ONLY_CFLAGS:U:M*}
pre-build-checks-hook: add-build-only-cflags

add-build-only-cflags: .PHONY
    ${RUN} cd ${CWRAPPERS_CONFIG_DIR};      \
    ${TEST} ! -f ${.TARGET} || exit 0;      \
    for flag in ${BUILD_ONLY_CFLAGS}; do    \
        ${ECHO} "append=$$flag" >> cc;     \
    done;                                    \
    > ${.TARGET}
.endif
```

(When editing the `mk.conf`, make sure that the commands of the `add-build-only-cflags` target are indented with a tab, not with spaces.)

The condition in the `.if` statement contains the `:U` modifier to prevent parse errors if the variable should be undefined, possibly because it is only defined for a subset of the packages. The `:M*` modifier ensures that there is at least one compiler option, to prevent a syntax error in the shell parser.

The code around the `${.TARGET}` variable ensures that the additional compiler options are only appended once, even if **bmake build** is run multiple times. To do this, it creates a marker file.

To verify that this setup works, run **bmake configure** in a package directory. Up to now, everything works as usual. Examine the directory `work/.cwrappers/config` to see that the compiler options from `BUILD_ONLY_CFLAGS` are not yet added to the file `cc`. Examine the tail of the `work/.work.log` file to see that the normal compiler options are used.

Now run **bmake build**. This will append the options to the file `cc` and will create the marker file in the same directory. After that, the build starts as usual, but with the added compiler options. Examine the tail of the file `work/.work.log` to see that the lines starting with `[*]` don't contain the compiler options, but the corresponding lines starting with `<.>` do end with these options.

Building packages using this setup variant and fixing the resulting bugs is the same as in Section 8.4.2.

8.4.4. Use custom directories

Some directories like `PREFIX`, `VARBASE`, `PKG_SYSCONFDIR`, `PKGMANDIR`, `PKG_INFODIR` can be configured in `pkgsrc`. Set these to arbitrary paths during bootstrap or afterwards in `mk.conf`.

```
PREFIX=          /a-random-uuid
PKG_SYSCONFDIR=  /a-random-uuid
VARBASE=         /a-random-uuid
PKGMANDIR= a-random-uuid
PKG_INFODIR= a-random-uuid
```

8.4.5. Turn warnings into errors

When building a package, warnings are typically ignored since they just flow by and do not cause the build to fail immediately. To find these warnings, redefine them to errors in `mk.conf`.

```
DELAYED_WARNING_MSG=    ${DELAYED_ERROR_MSG} "(was warning)"
WARNING_MSG=            ${FAIL_MSG} "(was warning)"
```

(There are many more classes of warnings in `pkgsrc`, and most of them can be redefined with a simple definition like above.

If a package suggests to add `USE_TOOLS+=perl` to the package Makefile, research whether the package actually needs Perl. If it does, add `USE_TOOLS+=perl` to the package Makefile, and if it doesn't, add `TOOLS_BROKEN+=perl`.

8.4.6. Reject packages for which `pkglint` reports errors

Using `pkglint` as part of the regular build process is mostly a waste of time. If you want to fix some of the warnings, just run `pkglint` recursively on the whole `pkgsrc` tree. This will take a few minutes (up to 10), which is much faster than a complete bulk build.

8.4.7. Reject packages that contain forbidden strings

To ensure that the binary packages don't contain references to the build directory, there is already `CHECK_WRKREF`. If that variable includes the item `extra`, it is possible to define additional patterns that must not appear in any installed file. This is specified in `mk.conf`.

```
CHECK_WRKREF=            extra
CHECK_WRKREF_EXTRA_DIRS+= /usr/local
CHECK_WRKREF_EXTRA_DIRS+= /usr/pkg
CHECK_WRKREF_EXTRA_DIRS+= @[A-Z][A-Z]*@
```

The above patterns will probably generate many false positives, therefore the results need to be taken with a grain of salt.

8.4.8. Reject packages whose self-test fails

To run the test suites that come with each package, add this line to `mk.conf`.

```
PKGSRC_RUN_TEST=        yes
```

Be prepared that even the most basic packages fail this test. When doing a bulk build with this, it will often abort in the early phase where the packages are scanned for their dependencies since there are cyclic dependencies. There is still a lot to do in this area.

8.4.9. Reject packages that use undefined shell variables

To catch typos in the shell snippets from the Makefile fragments, add the `-u` flag to most of the commands by adding this line to `mk.conf`.

```
RUN=      @set -eu;
```

After that, ensure that none of the bulk build log files (even those for successfully built packages) contains the string `parameter not set` or whatever error message the command `sh -ceu '$undefined'` outputs.

See `mk/misc/common.mk` for the existing definition.

8.4.10. Turn off verbose logging

The build logs of a package are often quite long. This allows error messages or other interesting details to hide between the noise. To make the actual error message stand out more, add these lines to `mk.conf`.

```
GNU_CONFIGURE_QUIET=    yes
MAKE_FLAGS+=             -s
```

The `-s` option works for both GNU Make and BSD Make. On exotic platforms with their own make, it may be a little different.

8.5. Creating a multiple CD-ROM packages collection

After your pkgsrc bulk-build has completed, you may wish to create a CD-ROM set of the resulting binary packages to assist in installing packages on other machines. The `pkgtools/cdpack` package provides a simple tool for creating the ISO 9660 images. **cdpack** arranges the packages on the CD-ROMs in a way that keeps all the dependencies for a given package on the same CD as that package.

8.5.1. Example of cdpack

Complete documentation for `cdpack` is found in the `cdpack(1)` man page. The following short example assumes that the binary packages are left in `/usr/pkgsrc/packages/All` and that sufficient disk space exists in `/u2` to hold the ISO 9660 images.

```
# mkdir /u2/images
# pkg_add /usr/pkgsrc/packages/All/cdpack
# cdpack /usr/pkgsrc/packages/All /u2/images
```

If you wish to include a common set of files (`COPYRIGHT`, `README`, etc.) on each CD in the collection, then you need to create a directory which contains these files, e.g.:

```
# mkdir /tmp/common
# echo "This is a README" > /tmp/common/README
# echo "Another file" > /tmp/common/COPYING
# mkdir /tmp/common/bin
# echo "#!/bin/sh" > /tmp/common/bin/myscript
# echo "echo Hello world" >> /tmp/common/bin/myscript
# chmod 755 /tmp/common/bin/myscript
```

Now create the images:

```
# cdpack -x /tmp/common /usr/pkgsrc/packages/All /u2/images
```

Each image will contain `README`, `COPYING`, and `bin/myscript` in their root directories.

Chapter 9.

Directory layout of the installed files

The files that are installed by pkgsrc are organized in a way that is similar to what you find in the `/usr` directory of the base system. But some details are different. This is because pkgsrc initially came from FreeBSD and had adopted its file system hierarchy. Later it was largely influenced by NetBSD. But no matter which operating system you are using pkgsrc with, you can expect the same layout for pkgsrc.

There are mainly four root directories for pkgsrc, which are all configurable in the `bootstrap/bootstrap` script. When pkgsrc has been installed as root, the default locations are:

```
LOCALBASE=          /usr/pkg
PKG_SYSCONFBASE=     /usr/pkg/etc
VARBASE=             /var
PKG_DBDIR=           /usr/pkg/pkgdb
```

In unprivileged mode (when pkgsrc has been installed as any other user), the default locations are:

```
LOCALBASE=          ${HOME}/pkg
PKG_SYSCONFBASE=     ${HOME}/pkg/etc
VARBASE=             ${HOME}/pkg/var
PKG_DBDIR=           ${HOME}/pkg/pkgdb
```

What these four directories are for, and what they look like is explained below.

- `LOCALBASE` corresponds to the `/usr` directory in the base system. It is the “main” directory where the files are installed and contains the well-known subdirectories like `bin`, `include`, `lib`, `share` and `sbin`.
- `VARBASE` corresponds to `/var` in the base system. Some programs (especially games, network daemons) need write access to it during normal operation.
- `PKG_SYSCONFDIR` corresponds to `/etc` in the base system. It contains configuration files of the packages, as well as pkgsrc’s `mk.conf` itself.

9.1. File system layout in `${LOCALBASE}`

The following directories exist in a typical pkgsrc installation in `${LOCALBASE}`.

`bin`

Contains executable programs that are intended to be directly used by the end user.

`emul`

Contains files for the emulation layers of various other operating systems, especially for NetBSD.

`etc` (the usual location of `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}`)

Contains the configuration files.

`include`

Contains headers for the C and C++ programming languages.

`info`

Contains GNU info files of various packages.

`lib`

Contains shared and static libraries.

`libdata`

Contains data files that don't change after installation. Other data files belong into `${VARBASE}`.

`libexec`

Contains programs that are not intended to be used by end users, such as helper programs or network daemons.

`libexec/cgi-bin`

Contains programs that are intended to be executed as CGI scripts by a web server.

`man` (the usual value of `${PKGMANDIR}`)

Contains brief documentation in form of manual pages.

`sbin`

Contains programs that are intended to be used only by the super-user.

`share`

Contains platform-independent data files that don't change after installation.

`share/doc`

Contains documentation files provided by the packages.

`share/examples`

Contains example files provided by the packages. Among others, the original configuration files are saved here and copied to `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}` during installation.

`share/examples/rc.d`

Contains the original files for rc.d scripts.

`var` (the usual location of `${VARBASE}`)

Contains files that may be modified after installation.

9.2. File system layout in `${VARBASE}`

`db/pkg` (the usual location of `${PKG_DBDIR}`)

Contains information about the currently installed packages.

`games`

Contains highscore files.

`log`

Contains log files.

`run`

Contains informational files about daemons that are currently running.

Chapter 10.

Frequently Asked Questions

This section contains hints, tips & tricks on special things in pkgsrc that we didn't find a better place for in the previous chapters, and it contains items for both pkgsrc users and developers.

10.1. Are there any mailing lists for pkg-related discussion?

The following mailing lists may be of interest to pkgsrc users:

- pkgsrc-users (<http://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#pkgsrc-users>): This is a general purpose list for most issues regarding pkgsrc, regardless of platform, e.g. soliciting user help for pkgsrc configuration, unexpected build failures, using particular packages, upgrading pkgsrc installations, questions regarding the pkgsrc release branches, etc. General announcements or proposals for changes that impact the pkgsrc user community, e.g. major infrastructure changes, new features, package removals, etc., may also be posted.
- pkgsrc-bulk (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#pkgsrc-bulk>): A list where the results of pkgsrc bulk builds are sent and discussed.
- pkgsrc-changes (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#pkgsrc-changes>): This list is for those who are interested in getting a commit message for every change committed to pkgsrc. It is also available in digest form, meaning one daily message containing all commit messages for changes to the package source tree in that 24 hour period.

To subscribe, do:

```
% echo subscribe listname | mail majordomo@NetBSD.org
```

Archives for all these mailing lists are available from <https://mail-index.NetBSD.org/>.

10.2. Utilities for package management (pkgtools)

The directory `pkgsrc/pkgtools` contains a number of useful utilities for both users and developers of pkgsrc. This section attempts only to make the reader aware of some of the utilities and when they might be useful, and not to duplicate the documentation that comes with each package.

Utilities used by pkgsrc (automatically installed when needed):

- `pkgtools/x11-links`: Symlinks for use by `buildlink`.

OS tool augmentation (automatically installed when needed):

- `pkgtools/digest`: Calculates various kinds of checksums (including SHA3).

- `pkgtools/libnbcompat`: Compatibility library for `pkgsrc` tools.
- `pkgtools/mtree`: Installed on non-BSD systems due to lack of native `mtree`.
- `pkgtools/pkg_install`: Up-to-date replacement for `/usr/sbin/pkg_install`, or for use on operating systems where `pkg_install` is not present.

Utilities used by `pkgsrc` (not automatically installed):

- `pkgtools/pkg_tarup`: Create a binary package from an already-installed package. Used by **make replace** to save the old package.
- `pkgtools/dfdisk`: Adds extra functionality to `pkgsrc`, allowing it to fetch distfiles from multiple locations. It currently supports the following methods: multiple CD-ROMs and network FTP/HTTP connections.
- `devel/cpuflags`: Determine the best compiler flags to optimise code for your current CPU and compiler.

Utilities for keeping track of installed packages, being up to date, etc:

- `pkgtools/pkgin`: A package update tool similar to `apt(1)`. Download, install, and upgrade binary packages easily.
- `pkgtools/pkg_chk`: Reports on packages whose installed versions do not match the latest `pkgsrc` entries.
- `pkgtools/pkgdep`: Makes dependency graphs of packages, to aid in choosing a strategy for updating.
- `pkgtools/pkgdepgraph`: Makes graphs from the output of `pkgtools/pkgdep` (uses `graphviz`).
- `pkgtools/pkglint`: The `pkglint(1)` program checks a `pkgsrc` entry for errors.
- `pkgtools/lintpkgsrc`: The `lintpkgsrc(1)` program does various checks on the complete `pkgsrc` system.
- `pkgtools/pkgsurvey`: Report what packages you have installed.

Utilities for people maintaining or creating individual packages:

- `pkgtools/pkgdiff`: Automate making and maintaining patches for a package (includes `pkgdiff`, `pkgvi`, `mkpatches`, etc.).
- `pkgtools/url2pkg`: Aids in converting to `pkgsrc`.

Utilities for people maintaining `pkgsrc` (or: more obscure `pkg` utilities)

- `pkgtools/pkg_comp`: Build packages in a chrooted area.
- `pkgtools/libkver`: Spoof kernel version for chrooted cross builds.

10.3. How to use `pkgsrc` as non-root

To install packages from source as a non-root user, download `pkgsrc` as described in Chapter 3, `cd` into that directory and run the command `./bootstrap/bootstrap --unprivileged`.

This will install the binary part of pkgsrc to `~/pkg` and put the pkgsrc configuration `mk.conf` into `~/pkg/etc`.

For more details, see `mk/unprivileged.mk`.

10.4. How to resume transfers when fetching distfiles?

By default, resuming transfers in pkgsrc is disabled, but you can enable this feature by adding the option `PKG_RESUME_TRANSFERS=YES` into `mk.conf`. If, during a fetch step, an incomplete distfile is found, pkgsrc will try to resume it.

You can also use a different program than the platform default program by changing the `FETCH_USING` variable. You can specify the program by using of `ftp`, `fetch`, `wget` or `curl`. Alternatively, fetching can be disabled by using the value `manual`. A value of `custom` disables the system defaults and dependency tracking for the fetch program. In that case you have to provide `FETCH_CMD`, `FETCH_BEFORE_ARGS`, `FETCH_RESUME_ARGS`, `FETCH_OUTPUT_ARGS`, `FETCH_AFTER_ARGS`.

For example, if you want to use `wget` to download, you'll have to use something like:

```
FETCH_USING=      wget
```

10.5. How can I install/use modular X.org from pkgsrc?

If you want to use modular X.org from pkgsrc instead of your system's own X11 (`/usr/X11R6`, `/usr/openwin`, ...) you will have to add the following line into `mk.conf`:

```
X11_TYPE=modular
```

10.6. How to fetch files from behind a firewall

If you are sitting behind a firewall which does not allow direct connections to Internet hosts (i.e. non-NAT), you may specify the relevant proxy hosts. This is done using an environment variable in the form of a URL, e.g. in Amdahl, the machine "orpheus.amdahl.com" is one of the firewalls, and it uses port 80 as the proxy port number. So the proxy environment variables are:

```
ftp_proxy=ftp://orpheus.amdahl.com:80/
http_proxy=http://orpheus.amdahl.com:80/
```

10.7. How to fetch files from HTTPS sites

Some fetch tools are not prepared to support HTTPS by default (for example, the one in NetBSD 6.0), or the one installed by the pkgsrc bootstrap (to avoid an openssl dependency that low in the dependency graph).

Usually you won't notice, because distribution files are mirrored weekly to "ftp.NetBSD.org", but that might not be often enough if you are following pkgsrc-current. In that case, set `FETCH_USING` in your

`mk.conf` file to “curl” or “wget”, which are both compiled with HTTPS support by default. Of course, these tools need to be installed before you can use them this way.

10.8. How do I tell make fetch to do passive FTP?

This depends on which utility is used to retrieve distfiles. From `bsd.pkg.mk`, `FETCH_CMD` is assigned the first available command from the following list:

- `${LOCALBASE}/bin/ftp`
- `/usr/bin/ftp`

On a default NetBSD installation, this will be `/usr/bin/ftp`, which automatically tries passive connections first, and falls back to active connections if the server refuses to do passive. For the other tools, add the following to your `mk.conf` file: `PASSIVE_FETCH=1`.

Having that option present will prevent `/usr/bin/ftp` from falling back to active transfers.

10.9. How to fetch all distfiles at once

You would like to download all the distfiles in a single batch from work or university, where you can’t run a **make fetch**. There is an archive of distfiles on ftp.NetBSD.org ([ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/](http://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/)), but downloading the entire directory may not be appropriate.

The answer here is to do a **make fetch-list** in `/usr/pkgsrc` or one of its subdirectories, carry the resulting list to your machine at work/school and use it there. If you don’t have a NetBSD-compatible `ftp(1)` (like `tnftp`) at work, don’t forget to set `FETCH_CMD` to something that fetches a URL:

At home:

```
% cd /usr/pkgsrc
% make fetch-list FETCH_CMD=wget DISTDIR=/tmp/distfiles >/tmp/fetch.sh
% scp /tmp/fetch.sh work:/tmp
```

At work:

```
% sh /tmp/fetch.sh
```

then tar up `/tmp/distfiles` and take it home.

If you have a machine running NetBSD, and you want to get *all* distfiles (even ones that aren’t for your machine architecture), you can do so by using the above-mentioned **make fetch-list** approach, or fetch the distfiles directly by running:

```
% make mirror-distfiles
```

If you even decide to ignore `NO_{SRC,BIN}_ON_{FTP,CDROM}`, then you can get everything by running:

```
% make fetch NO_SKIP=yes
```

10.10. What does “Don’t know how to make /usr/share/tmac/tmac.andoc” mean?

When compiling the `pkgtools/pkg_install` package, you get the error from `make` that it doesn’t know how to make `/usr/share/tmac/tmac.andoc`? This indicates that you don’t have installed the “text” set (`nroff`, ...) from the NetBSD base distribution on your machine. It is recommended to do that to format man pages.

In the case of the `pkgtools/pkg_install` package, you can get away with setting `NOMAN=YES` either in the environment or in `mk.conf`.

10.11. What does “Could not find `bsd.own.mk`” mean?

You didn’t install the compiler set, `comp.tgz`, when you installed your NetBSD machine. Please get and install it, by extracting it in `/`:

```
# cd /
# tar --unlink -zxvpf ../comp.tgz
```

`comp.tgz` is part of every NetBSD release. Get the one that corresponds to your release (determine via `uname -r`).

10.12. Using ‘`sudo`’ with `pkgsrc`

When installing packages as non-root user and using the just-in-time `su(1)` feature of `pkgsrc`, it can become annoying to type in the root password for each required package installed. To avoid this, the `sudo` package can be used, which does password caching over a limited time. To use it, install `sudo` (either as binary package or from `security/sudo`) and then put the following into your `mk.conf`, somewhere *after* the definition of the `LOCALBASE` variable:

```
.if exists(${LOCALBASE}/bin/sudo)
SU_CMD=      ${LOCALBASE}/bin/sudo /bin/sh -c
.endif
```

10.13. How do I change the location of configuration files?

As the system administrator, you can choose where configuration files are installed. The default settings make all these files go into `${PREFIX}/etc` or some of its subdirectories; this may be suboptimal depending on your expectations (e.g., a read-only, NFS-exported `PREFIX` with a need of per-machine configuration of the provided packages).

In order to change the defaults, you can modify the `PKG_SYSCONFBASE` variable (in `mk.conf`) to point to your preferred configuration directory; some common examples include `/etc` or `/etc/pkg`.

Furthermore, you can change this value on a per-package basis by setting the `PKG_SYSCONFDIR.${PKG_SYSCONFVAR}` variable. `PKG_SYSCONFVAR`’s value usually matches the name of the package you would like to modify, that is, the contents of `PKGBASE`.

Note that after changing these settings, you must rebuild and reinstall any affected packages.

10.14. Automated security checks

Please be aware that there can often be bugs in third-party software, and some of these bugs can leave a machine vulnerable to exploitation by attackers. In an effort to lessen the exposure, the NetBSD packages team maintains a database of known-exploits to packages which have at one time been included in pkgsrc. The database can be downloaded automatically, and a security audit of all packages installed on a system can take place. To do this, refer to the following two tools (installed as part of the `pkgtools/pkg_install` package):

1. **pkg_admin fetch-pkg-vulnerabilities**, an easy way to download a list of the security vulnerabilities information. This list is kept up to date by the pkgsrc security team, and is distributed from the NetBSD ftp server:
`https://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/NetBSD/packages/vulns/pkg-vulnerabilities`
2. **pkg_admin audit**, an easy way to audit the current machine, checking each known vulnerability. If a vulnerable package is installed, it will be shown by output to stdout, including a description of the type of vulnerability, and a URL containing more information.

Use of these tools is strongly recommended! See Section 5.1.6 for instructions on how to automate checking and reporting.

If this database is installed, pkgsrc builds will use it to perform a security check before building any package.

10.15. Why do some packages ignore my CFLAGS?

When you add your own preferences to the `CFLAGS` variable in your `mk.conf`, these flags are passed in environment variables to the `./configure` scripts and to `make(1)`. Some package authors ignore the `CFLAGS` from the environment variable by overriding them in the `Makefiles` of their package.

Currently there is no solution to this problem. If you really need the package to use your `CFLAGS` you should run **make patch** in the package directory and then inspect any `Makefile` and `Makefile.in` for whether they define `CFLAGS` explicitly. Usually you can remove these lines. But be aware that some “smart” programmers write so bad code that it only works for the specific combination of `CFLAGS` they have chosen.

To find out where the `CFLAGS` are ignored, add the following lines to `mk.conf`:

```
CPPFLAGS+=          -Dpkgsrc__CPPFLAGS
CFLAGS+=             -Dpkgsrc__CFLAGS
CXXFLAGS+=           -Dpkgsrc__CXXFLAGS
```

Then run **bmake show-all-configure show-all-build** to see whether the above flags are passed to the actual build commands in general.

To find out whether the flags are passed to individual compiler commands, have a look at the file `work/.work.log`. In most cases, the flags from the original command lines (the lines starting with `[*]`)

are passed unmodified to the actual compiler (the lines starting with `< . >`). If the flag is missing from the actual compiler command, it must have been removed by the `pkgsrc` compiler wrappers.

10.16. A package does not build. What shall I do?

1. Make sure that your copy of `pkgsrc` is consistent. A case that occurs often is that people only update `pkgsrc` in parts, because of performance reasons. Since `pkgsrc` is one large system, not a collection of many small systems, there are sometimes changes that only work when the whole `pkgsrc` tree is updated.
2. Make sure that you don't have any CVS conflicts. Search for "`<<<<<<`" or "`>>>>>>`" in all your `pkgsrc` files.
3. Make sure that you don't have old copies of the packages extracted. Run **make clean clean-depends** to verify this.
4. If you are a package developer who wants to invest some work, have a look at Chapter 21.
5. If the problem still exists, write a mail to the `pkgsrc-users` mailing list.

10.17. What does "Makefile appears to contain unresolved cvs/rcs/??? merge conflicts" mean?

You have modified a file from `pkgsrc`, and someone else has modified that same file afterwards in the CVS repository. Both changes are in the same region of the file, so when you updated `pkgsrc`, the `cvs` command marked the conflicting changes in the file. Because of these markers, the file is no longer a valid `Makefile`.

Have a look at that file, and if you don't need your local changes anymore, you can remove that file and run **cvs -q update -dP** in that directory to download the current version.

II. The pkgsrc developer's guide

This part of the book deals with creating and modifying packages. It starts with a “HOWTO”-like guide on creating a new package. The remaining chapters are more like a reference manual for pkgsrc.

Chapter 11.

Getting help

To get help when developing pkgsrc, the definitive source is this document, the pkgsrc guide. If you don't find anything here, there are alternatives:

- The built-in pkgsrc help, which is available after bootstrapping pkgsrc. Run **bmake help topic=...** to get help for any topic, such as a variable name like `BUILD_DEFS`, a make target like **do-build**, a missing C or C++ function like **strcasecmp** or any other topic.

The available help topics are listed in Appendix E.

- To see the value of a single variable, run **bmake show-var VARNAME=x**.
- To see the values of the most common variables, run **bmake show-all**. These variables are grouped by topic. To see the variables for a single topic, run **bmake show-all-topic**, for example **bmake show-all-fetch**.
- The tech-pkg mailing list, to which you can subscribe (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/#tech-pkg>) and then ask your questions (<mailto:tech-pkg@NetBSD.org>).
- The #pkgsrc IRC channel, which is accessible via a web browser (<https://webchat.freenode.net/>) or by using a specialized chat program such as XChat (<http://xchat.org/>). Pick any user name and join the channel #pkgsrc.

Chapter 12.

Package components - files, directories and contents

Whenever you're preparing a package, there are a number of files involved which are described in the following sections.

12.1. Makefile

Building, installation and creation of a binary package are all controlled by the package's `Makefile`. The `Makefile` describes various things about a package, for example from where to get it, how to configure, build, and install it.

A package `Makefile` contains several sections that describe the package.

In the first section there are the following variables, which should appear exactly in the order given here. The order and grouping of the variables is mostly historical and has no further meaning.

- `DISTNAME` is the basename of the distribution file to be downloaded from the package's website.
- `PKGNAME` is the name of the package, as used by `pkgsrc`. You need to provide it if `DISTNAME` (which is the default) is not a good name for the package in `pkgsrc` or `DISTNAME` is not provided (no distribution file is required). Usually it is the `pkgsrc` directory name together with the version number. It must match the regular expression `^[A-Za-z0-9][A-Za-z0-9-_.+]*$`, that is, it starts with a letter or digit, and contains only letters, digits, dashes, underscores, dots and plus signs. New packages should have entirely lower-case names, with the exception of some that must follow pre-existing conventions (e.g. R packages begin with `R-`). You can use the `:tl` variable modifier to lower-case the package name.
- `CATEGORIES` is a list of categories which the package fits in. You can choose any of the top-level directories of `pkgsrc` for it.

Currently the following values are available for `CATEGORIES`. If more than one is used, they need to be separated by spaces:

archivers	cross	geography	meta-pkgs	security
audio	databases	graphics	misc	shells
benchmarks	devel	ham	multimedia	sysutils
biology	editors	inputmethod	net	textproc
cad	emulators	lang	news	time
chat	finance	mail	parallel	wm
comms	fonts	math	pkgtools	www
converters	games	mbone	print	x11

- `MASTER_SITES`, `DYNAMIC_MASTER_SITES`, `DIST_SUBDIR`, `EXTRACT_SUFX` and `DISTFILES` are discussed in detail in Section 13.5.

The second section contains information about separately downloaded patches, if any.

- `PATCHFILES`: Name(s) of additional files that contain distribution patches. There is no default. `pkgsrc` will look for them at `PATCH_SITES`. They will automatically be uncompressed before patching if the names end with `.gz` or `.Z`.
- `PATCH_SITES`: Primary location(s) for distribution patch files (see `PATCHFILES` above) if not found locally.
- `PATCH_DIST_STRIP`: an argument to `patch(1)` that sets the pathname strip count to help find the correct files to patch. It defaults to `-p0`.

The third section contains the following variables.

- `MAINTAINER` is the email address of the person who feels responsible for this package, and who is most likely to look at problems or questions regarding this package which have been reported with `send-pr(1)`. Other developers may contact the `MAINTAINER` before making changes to the package, but are not required to do so. When packaging a new program, set `MAINTAINER` to yourself. If you really can't maintain the package for future updates, set it to `<pkgsrc-users@NetBSD.org>`.
- `OWNER` should be used instead of `MAINTAINER` when you do not want other developers to update or change the package without contacting you first. A package Makefile should contain one of `MAINTAINER` or `OWNER`, but not both.
- `HOMEPAGE` is a URL where users can find more information about the package.
- `COMMENT` is a one-line description of the package (should not include the package name).
- `LICENSE` indicates the license(s) applicable for the package. See Section 21.1.3 for further details.

Other variables that affect the build:

- `WRKSR`: The directory where the interesting distribution files of the package are found. The default is `${WRKDIR}/${DISTNAME}`, which works for most packages.

If a package doesn't create a subdirectory for itself (most GNU software does, for instance), but extracts itself in the current directory, you should set `WRKSR=${WRKDIR}`.

If a package doesn't create a subdirectory with the name of `DISTNAME` but some different name, set `WRKSR` to point to the proper name in `${WRKDIR}`, for example `WRKSR=${WRKDIR}/${DISTNAME}/unix`. See `lang/tcl` and `x11/tk` for other examples.

The name of the working directory created by `pkgsrc` is taken from the `WRKDIR_BASENAME` variable. By default, its value is `work`. If you want to use the same `pkgsrc` tree for building different kinds of binary packages, you can change the variable according to your needs. Two other variables handle common cases of setting `WRKDIR_BASENAME` individually. If `OBJHOSTNAME` is defined in `mk.conf`, the first component of the host's name is attached to the directory name. If `OBJMACHINE` is defined, the platform name is attached, which might look like `work.i386` or `work.sparc`.

Please pay attention to the following gotchas:

- Add `MANCOMPRESSED` if man pages are installed in compressed form by the package. For packages using BSD-style makefiles which honor `MANZ`, there is `MANCOMPRESSED_IF_MANZ`.
- Replace `/usr/local` with “`${PREFIX}`” in all files (see patches, below).
- If the package installs any info files, see Section 21.6.7.

12.2. `distinfo`

The `distinfo` file contains the message digest, or checksum, of each distfile needed for the package. This ensures that the distfiles retrieved from the Internet have not been corrupted during transfer or altered by a malign force to introduce a security hole. To provide maximum security, all distfiles are protected using three different message digest algorithms (SHA1, RMD160, SHA512), as well as the file size.

The `distinfo` file also contains the checksums for all the patches found in the `patches` directory (see Section 12.3). These checksums ensure that patches are only applied intentionally and that they don't accidentally change, e.g. when merging different changes together. They also make sure that new patches are actually added to CVS and old ones are removed. To see whether the patches and the `distinfo` file match, run **pkglint** after changing the patches.

To regenerate the `distinfo` file, use the **make distinfo** command.

Some packages have different sets of distfiles depending on the platform, for example `lang/openjdk8`. These are kept in the same `distinfo` file and care should be taken when upgrading such a package to ensure distfile information is not lost.

12.3. `patches/`*

Some packages don't work out-of-the box on the various platforms that are supported by `pkgsrc`. These packages need to be patched to make them work. The patch files can be found in the `patches/` directory.

In the *patch* phase, these patches are applied to the files in `WRKSRCDIR` directory after extracting them, in alphabetic order.

12.3.1. Structure of a single patch file

The `patch-*` files should be in **diff -bu** format, and apply without a fuzz to avoid problems. (To force patches to apply with fuzz you can set `PATCH_FUZZ_FACTOR=-F2`). Furthermore, each patch should contain only changes for a single file, and no file should be patched by more than one patch file. This helps to keep future modifications simple.

Each patch file is structured as follows: In the first line, there is the RCS Id of the patch itself. The second line should be empty for aesthetic reasons. After that, there should be a comment for each change that the patch does. There are a number of standard cases:

- Patches for commonly known vulnerabilities should mention the vulnerability ID (CAN, CVE).

- Patches that change source code should mention the platform and other environment (for example, the compiler) that the patch is needed for.

The patch should be commented so that any developer who knows the code of the application can make some use of the patch. Special care should be taken for the upstream developers, since we generally want that they accept our patches, so we have less work in the future.

12.3.2. Creating patch files

One important thing to mention is to pay attention that no RCS IDs get stored in the patch files, as these will cause problems when later checked into the NetBSD CVS tree. Use the **pkgdiff** command from the `pkgtools/pkgdiff` package to avoid these problems.

For even more automation, we recommend using **mkpatches** from the same package to make a whole set of patches. You just have to backup files before you edit them to `filename.orig`, e.g. with **cp -p filename filename.orig** or, easier, by using **pkgvi** again from the same package. If you upgrade a package this way, you can easily compare the new set of patches with the previously existing one with **patchdiff**. The files in `patches` are replaced by new files, so carefully check if you want to take all the changes.

When you have finished a package, remember to generate the checksums for the patch files by using the **make makepatchsum** command, see Section 12.2.

When adding a patch that corrects a problem in the distfile (rather than e.g. enforcing pkgsrc's view of where man pages should go), send the patch as a bug report to the maintainer. This benefits non-pkgsrc users of the package, and usually makes it possible to remove the patch in future version.

The file names of the patch files are usually of the form `patch-path_to_file__with__underscores.c`. Many packages still use the previous convention `patch-[a-z][a-z]`, but new patches should be of the form containing the filename. **mkpatches** included in `pkgtools/pkgdiff` takes care of the name automatically.

12.3.3. Sources where the patch files come from

If you want to share patches between multiple packages in pkgsrc, e.g. because they use the same distfiles, set `PATCHDIR` to the path where the patch files can be found, e.g.:

```
PATCHDIR=      ../../editors/xemacs/patches
```

Patch files that are distributed by the author or other maintainers can be listed in `PATCHFILES`.

If it is desired to store any patches that should not be committed into pkgsrc, they can be kept outside the pkgsrc tree in the `$LOCALPATCHES` directory. The directory tree there is expected to have the same “category/package” structure as pkgsrc, and patches are expected to be stored inside these dirs (also known as `$LOCALPATCHES/$PKGPATH`). For example, if you want to keep a private patch for `pkgsrc/graphics/png`, keep it in `$LOCALPATCHES/graphics/png/mypatch`. All files in the named directory are expected to be patch files, and *they are applied after pkgsrc patches are applied*.

12.3.4. Patching guidelines

When fixing a portability issue in the code do not use preprocessor magic to check for the current operating system nor platform. Doing so hurts portability to other platforms because the OS-specific details are not abstracted appropriately.

The general rule to follow is: instead of checking for the operating system the application is being built on, check for the specific *features* you need. For example, instead of assuming that `kqueue` is available under NetBSD and using the `__NetBSD__` macro to conditionalize `kqueue` support, add a check that detects `kqueue` itself — yes, this generally involves patching the **configure** script. There is absolutely nothing that prevents some OSes from adopting interfaces from other OSes (e.g. Linux implementing `kqueue`), something that the above checks cannot take into account.

Of course, checking for features generally involves more work on the developer's side, but the resulting changes are cleaner and there are chances they will work on many other platforms. Not to mention that there are higher chances of being later integrated into the mainstream sources. Remember: *It doesn't work unless it is right!*

Some typical examples:

Table 12-1. Patching examples

Where	Incorrect	Correct
configure script	<pre>case \${target_os} in netbsd*) have_kvm=yes ;; *) have_kvm=no ;; esac</pre>	<pre>AC_CHECK_LIB(kvm, kvm_open, have_kvm=yes)</pre>
C source file	<pre>#if defined(__NetBSD__) # include <sys/event.h> #endif</pre>	<pre>#if defined(HAVE_SYS_EVENT_H) # include <sys/event.h> #endif</pre>
C source file	<pre>int monitor_file(...) { #if defined(__NetBSD__) int fd = kqueue(); ... #else ... #endif }</pre>	<pre>int monitor_file(...) { #if defined(HAVE_KQUEUE) int fd = kqueue(); ... #else ... #endif }</pre>

12.3.5. Feedback to the author

Always, always, **always** feed back any *portability fixes* or improvements you do to a package to the mainstream developers. This is the only way to get their attention on portability issues and to ensure that future versions can be built out-of-the box on NetBSD. Furthermore, any user that gets newer distfiles will get the fixes straight from the packaged code.

This generally involves cleaning up the patches (because sometimes the patches that are added to `pkgsrc` are quick hacks), filing bug reports in the appropriate trackers for the projects and working with the mainstream authors to accept your changes. It is *extremely important* that you do it so that the packages in `pkgsrc` are kept simple and thus further changes can be done without much hassle.

When you have done this, please add a URL to the upstream bug report to the patch comment.

Support the idea of free software!

12.4. Other mandatory files

DESCR

A multi-line description of the piece of software. This should include any credits where they are due. Please bear in mind that others do not share your sense of humour (or spelling idiosyncrasies), and that others will read everything that you write here.

PLIST

This file governs the files that are installed on your system: all the binaries, manual pages, etc. There are other directives which may be entered in this file, to control the creation and deletion of directories, and the location of inserted files. See Chapter 19 for more information.

12.5. Optional files

12.5.1. Files affecting the binary package

INSTALL

This shell script is invoked twice by `pkg_add(1)`. First time after package extraction and before files are moved in place, the second time after the files to install are moved in place. This can be used to do any custom procedures not possible with `@exec` commands in `PLIST`. See `pkg_add(1)` and `pkg_create(1)` for more information. See also Section 20.1. Please note that you can modify variables in it easily by using `FILES_SUBST` in the package's `Makefile`:

```
FILES_SUBST+= SOMEVAR="somevalue"
```

replaces "`@SOMEVAR@`" with "somevalue" in the `INSTALL`. By default, substitution is performed for `PREFIX`, `LOCALBASE`, `X11BASE`, `VARBASE`, and a few others, type **make help** **topic=FILES_SUBST** for a complete list.

DEINSTALL

This script is executed before and after any files are removed. It is this script's responsibility to clean up any additional messy details around the package's installation, since all `pkg_delete` knows is how to delete the files created in the original distribution. See `pkg_delete(1)` and `pkg_create(1)` for more information. The same methods to replace variables can be used as for the `INSTALL` file.

MESSAGE

This file is displayed after installation of the package. While this was used often in the past, it has two problems: the display will be missed if many packages are installed at once, and the person installing the package and the one using or configuring it may be different. It should therefore be used only in exceptional circumstances where lasting negative consequences would result from someone not reading it.

MESSAGE should not be used for:

- exhortations to read the documentation
- reminders to install rc.d files and set variables
- anything that should be explained in the installation/configuration documentation that should come with the package

If the documentation provided by upstream needs enhancing, create e.g. files/README.pkgsrc and install it in the package's documentation directory.

Note that MESSAGE is shown for all operating systems and all init systems. If a MESSAGE is necessary, it should be narrowed to only those operating systems and init systems to which it applies.

Note that you can modify variables in it easily by using MESSAGE_SUBST in the package's Makefile:

```
MESSAGE_SUBST+= SOMEVAR="somevalue"
```

replaces "\${SOMEVAR}" with "somevalue" in MESSAGE. By default, substitution is performed for PKGNAME, PKGBASE, PREFIX, LOCALBASE, X11BASE, PKG_SYSCONFDIR, ROOT_GROUP, and ROOT_USER.

You can display a different or additional files by setting the MESSAGE_SRC variable. Its default is MESSAGE, if the file exists.

ALTERNATIVES

This file is used by the alternatives framework. It creates, configures, and destroys generic wrappers used to run programs with similar interfaces. See pkg_alternatives(8) from pkgtools/pkg_alternatives for more information.

Each line of the file contains two filenames, first the wrapper and then the alternative provided by the package. Both paths are relative to PREFIX.

12.5.2. Files affecting the build process

Makefile.common

This file contains arbitrary things that could also go into a Makefile, but its purpose is to be used by more than one package. This file should only be used when the packages that will use the file are known in advance. For other purposes it is often better to write a *.mk file and give it a good name that describes what it does.

buildlink3.mk

This file contains the dependency information for the buildlink3 framework (see Chapter 18).

hacks.mk

This file contains workarounds for compiler bugs and similar things. It is included automatically by the pkgsrc infrastructure, so you don't need an extra .include line for it.

`options.mk`

This file contains the code for the package-specific options (see Chapter 16) that can be selected by the user. If a package has only one or two options, it is equally acceptable to put the code directly into the `Makefile`.

12.5.3. Files affecting nothing at all

`README*`

These files do not take place in the creation of a package and thus are purely informative to the package developer.

`TODO`

This file contains things that need to be done to make the package even better.

12.6. `work*`

When you type **make**, the distribution files are unpacked into the directory denoted by `WRKDIR`. It can be removed by running **make clean**. Besides the sources, this directory is also used to keep various timestamp files. The directory gets *removed completely* on clean. The default is `${.CURDIR}/work` or `${.CURDIR}/work.${MACHINE_ARCH}` if `OBJMACHINE` is set.

12.7. `files/*`

If you have any files that you wish to be placed in the package prior to configuration or building, you can place these files here and use a `${CP}` command in the “post-extract” target to achieve this.

If you want to share files in this way with other packages, set the `FILES_DIR` variable to point to the other package’s `files` directory, e.g.:

```
FILES_DIR=      ../../editors/xemacs/files
```

Chapter 13.

The build process

13.1. Introduction

This chapter gives a detailed description on how a package is built. Building a package is separated into different *phases* (for example `fetch`, `build`, `install`), all of which are described in the following sections. Each phase is split into so-called *stages*, which take the name of the containing phase, prefixed by one of `pre-`, `do-` or `post-`. (Examples are `pre-configure`, `post-build`.) Most of the actual work is done in the `do-*` stages.

Never override the regular targets (like `fetch`), if you have to, override the `do-*` ones instead.

The basic steps for building a program are always the same. First the program's source (*distfile*) must be brought to the local system and then extracted. After any `pkgsrc`-specific patches to compile properly are applied, the software can be configured, then built (usually by compiling), and finally the generated binaries, etc. can be put into place on the system.

To get more details about what is happening at each step, you can set the `PKG_VERBOSE` variable, or the `PATCH_DEBUG` variable if you are just interested in more details about the *patch* step.

13.2. Program location

Before outlining the process performed by the NetBSD package system in the next section, here's a brief discussion on where programs are installed, and which variables influence this.

The automatic variable `PREFIX` indicates where all files of the final program shall be installed. It is usually set to `LOCALBASE` (`/usr/pkg`), or `CROSSBASE` for pkgs in the `cross` category. The value of `PREFIX` needs to be put into the various places in the program's source where paths to these files are encoded. See Section 12.3 and Section 21.3.1 for more details.

When choosing which of these variables to use, follow the following rules:

- `PREFIX` always points to the location where the current pkg will be installed. When referring to a pkg's own installation path, use “`${PREFIX}`”.
- `LOCALBASE` is where all non-X11 pkgs are installed. If you need to construct a `-I` or `-L` argument to the compiler to find includes and libraries installed by another non-X11 pkg, use “`${LOCALBASE}`”. The name `LOCALBASE` stems from FreeBSD, which installed all packages in `/usr/local`. As `pkgsrc` leaves `/usr/local` for the system administrator, this variable is a misnomer.
- `X11BASE` is where the actual X11 distribution (from `xsrc`, etc.) is installed. When looking for *standard* X11 includes (not those installed by a package), use “`${X11BASE}`”.
- X11-based packages using `imake` must set `USE_IMAKE` to be installed correctly under `LOCALBASE`.

- Within `${PREFIX}`, packages should install files according to `hier(7)`, with the exception that manual pages go into `${PREFIX}/man`, not `${PREFIX}/share/man`.

13.3. Directories used during the build process

When building a package, various directories are used to store source files, temporary files, pkgsrc-internal files, and so on. These directories are explained here.

Some of the directory variables contain relative pathnames. There are two common base directories for these relative directories: `PKGSRCDIR`/`PKGPATH` is used for directories that are pkgsrc-specific. `WRKSR` is used for directories inside the package itself.

`PKGSRCDIR`

This is an absolute pathname that points to the pkgsrc root directory. Generally, you don't need it.

`PKGDIR`

This is an absolute pathname that points to the current package.

`PKGPATH`

This is a pathname relative to `PKGSRCDIR` that points to the current package.

`WRKDIR`

This is an absolute pathname pointing to the directory where all work takes place. The distfiles are extracted to this directory. It also contains temporary directories and log files used by the various pkgsrc frameworks, like *buildlink* or the *wrappers*.

`WRKSR`

This is an absolute pathname pointing to the directory where the distfiles are extracted. It is usually a direct subdirectory of `WRKDIR`, and often it's the only directory entry that isn't hidden. This variable may be changed by a package `Makefile`.

The `CREATE_WRKDIR_SYMLINK` definition takes either the value *yes* or *no* and defaults to *no*. It indicates whether a symbolic link to the `WRKDIR` is to be created in the pkgsrc entry's directory. If users would like to have their pkgsrc trees behave in a read-only manner, then the value of `CREATE_WRKDIR_SYMLINK` should be set to *no*.

13.4. Running a phase

You can run a particular phase by typing **make phase**, where *phase* is the name of the phase. This will automatically run all phases that are required for this phase. The default phase is `build`, that is, when you run **make** without parameters in a package directory, the package will be built, but not installed.

13.5. The *fetch* phase

The first step in building a package is to fetch the distribution files (distfiles) from the sites that are providing them. This is the task of the *fetch* phase.

13.5.1. What to fetch and where to get it from

In simple cases, `MASTER_SITES` defines all URLs from where the distfile, whose name is derived from the `DISTNAME` variable, is fetched. The more complicated cases are described below.

The variable `DISTFILES` specifies the list of distfiles that have to be fetched. Its value defaults to `${DEFAULT_DISTFILES}` and its value is `${DISTNAME}${EXTRACT_SUFX}`, so that most packages don't need to define it at all. `EXTRACT_SUFX` is `.tar.gz` by default, but can be changed freely. Note that if your package requires additional distfiles to the default one, you cannot just append the additional filenames using the `+=` operator, but you have write for example:

```
DISTFILES=      ${DEFAULT_DISTFILES} additional-files.tar.gz
```

Each distfile is fetched from a list of sites, usually `MASTER_SITES`. If the package has multiple `DISTFILES` or multiple `PATCHFILES` from different sites, you can set `SITES.distfile` to the list of URLs where the file *distfile* (including the suffix) can be found.

```
DISTFILES=      ${DISTNAME}${EXTRACT_SUFX}
DISTFILES+=     foo-file.tar.gz
SITES.foo-file.tar.gz= \
https://www.somewhere.com/somewhat/ \
https://www.somewhereelse.com/mirror/somewhat/
```

When actually fetching the distfiles, each item from `MASTER_SITES` or `SITES.*` gets the name of each distfile appended to it, without an intermediate slash. Therefore, all site values have to end with a slash or other separator character. This allows for example to set `MASTER_SITES` to a URL of a CGI script that gets the name of the distfile as a parameter. In this case, the definition would look like:

```
MASTER_SITES=   https://www.example.com/download.cgi?file=
```

The exception to this rule are URLs starting with a dash. In that case the URL is taken as is, fetched and the result stored under the name of the distfile. You can use this style for the case when the download URL style does not match the above common case. For example, if permanent download URL is a redirector to the real download URL, or the download file name is offered by an HTTP Content-Disposition header. In the following example, `foo-1.0.0.tar.gz` will be created instead of the default `v1.0.0.tar.gz`.

```
DISTNAME=       foo-1.0.0
MASTER_SITES=   -https://www.example.com/archive/v1.0.0.tar.gz
```

There are some predefined values for `MASTER_SITES`, which can be used in packages. The names of the variables should speak for themselves.

<code>MASTER_SITE_APACHE</code>	<code>MASTER_SITE_BACKUP</code>
<code>MASTER_SITE_CRATESIO</code>	<code>MASTER_SITE_CYGWIN</code>
<code>MASTER_SITE_DEBIAN</code>	<code>MASTER_SITE_FREEBSD</code>
<code>MASTER_SITE_FREEBSD_LOCAL</code>	<code>MASTER_SITE_GENTOO</code>

MASTER_SITE_GITHUB	MASTER_SITE_GNOME
MASTER_SITE_GNU	MASTER_SITE_GNUSTEP
MASTER_SITE_HASKELL_HACKAGE	MASTER_SITE_IFARCHIVE
MASTER_SITE_KDE	MASTER_SITE_MOZILLA
MASTER_SITE_MOZILLA_ALL	MASTER_SITE_MYSQL
MASTER_SITE_NETLIB	MASTER_SITE_OPENBSD
MASTER_SITE_OPENOFFICE	MASTER_SITE OSDN
MASTER_SITE_PERL_CPAN	MASTER_SITE_PGSQL
MASTER_SITE_PYPI	MASTER_SITE_RUBYGEMS
MASTER_SITE_R_CRAN	MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE
MASTER_SITE_SUNSITE	MASTER_SITE_SUSE
MASTER_SITE_TEX_CTAN	MASTER_SITE_XCONTRIB
MASTER_SITE_XEMACS	MASTER_SITE_XORG

Some explanations for the less self-explaining ones: `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP` contains backup sites for packages that are maintained in `ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/${DIST_SUBDIR}`.

`MASTER_SITE_LOCAL` contains local package source distributions that are maintained in `ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/distfiles/LOCAL_PORTS/`.

If you choose one of these predefined sites, you may want to specify a subdirectory of that site. Since these macros may expand to more than one actual site, you *must* use the following construct to specify a subdirectory:

```
MASTER_SITES=    ${MASTER_SITE_GNU:=subdirectory/name/}
MASTER_SITES=    ${MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE:=project_name/}
```

Note the trailing slash after the subdirectory name.

13.5.2. How are the files fetched?

The *fetch* phase makes sure that all the distfiles exist in a local directory (`DISTDIR`, which can be set by the `pkgsrc` user). If the files do not exist, they are fetched using commands of the form

```
${FETCH_CMD} ${FETCH_BEFORE_ARGS} ${site}${file} ${FETCH_AFTER_ARGS}
```

where `${site}` varies through several possibilities in turn: first, `MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE` is tried, then the sites specified in either `SITES.file` if defined, else `MASTER_SITES` or `PATCH_SITES`, as applies, then finally the value of `MASTER_SITE_BACKUP`. The order of all except the first and the last can be optionally sorted by the user, via setting either `MASTER_SORT_RANDOM`, and `MASTER_SORT_AWK` or `MASTER_SORT_REGEX`.

The specific command and arguments used depend on the `FETCH_USING` parameter. The example above is for `FETCH_USING=custom`.

The distfiles mirror run by the NetBSD Foundation uses the *mirror-distfiles* target to mirror the distfiles, if they are freely distributable. Packages setting `NO_SRC_ON_FTP` (usually to “`${RESTRICTED}`”) will not have their distfiles mirrored.

13.6. The *checksum* phase

After the distfile(s) are fetched, their checksum is generated and compared with the checksums stored in

the `distinfo` file. If the checksums don't match, the build is aborted. This is to ensure the same distfile is used for building, and that the distfile wasn't changed, e.g. by some malign force, deliberately changed distfiles on the master distribution site or network lossage.

13.7. The *extract* phase

When the distfiles are present on the local system, they need to be extracted, as they usually come in the form of some compressed archive format.

By default, all `DISTFILES` are extracted. If you only need some of them, you can set the `EXTRACT_ONLY` variable to the list of those files.

Extracting the files is usually done by a little program, `mk/extract/extract`, which already knows how to extract various archive formats, so most likely you will not need to change anything here. But if you need, the following variables may help you:

```
EXTRACT_OPTS_{BIN,LHA,PAX,RAR,TAR,ZIP,ZOO}
```

Use these variables to override the default options for an `extract` command, which are defined in `mk/extract/extract`.

```
EXTRACT_USING
```

This variable can be set to `bsdtar`, `gtar`, `nbtar` (which is the default value), `pax`, or an absolute pathname pointing to the command with which tar archives should be extracted. It is preferred to choose `bsdtar` over `gtar` if NetBSD's `pax-as-tar` is not good enough.

If the `extract` program doesn't serve your needs, you can also override the `EXTRACT_CMD` variable, which holds the command used for extracting the files. This command is executed in the `${WRKSR}` directory. During execution of this command, the shell variable `extract_file` holds the absolute pathname of the file that is going to be extracted.

And if that still does not suffice, you can override the `do-extract` target in the package Makefile.

13.8. The *patch* phase

After extraction, all the patches named by the `PATCHFILES`, those present in the `patches` subdirectory of the package as well as in `$LOCALPATCHES/$PKGPATH` (e.g.

`/usr/local/patches/graphics/png`) are applied. Patchfiles ending in `.z` or `.gz` are uncompressed before they are applied, files ending in `.orig` or `.rej` are ignored. Any special options to `patch(1)` can be handed in `PATCH_DIST_ARGS`. See Section 12.3 for more details.

By default `patch(1)` is given special arguments to make it fail if the expected text from the patch context is not found in the patched file. If that happens, fix the patch file by comparing it with the actual text in the file to be patched.

13.9. The *tools* phase

This is covered in Chapter 17.

13.10. The *wrapper* phase

This phase creates wrapper programs for the compilers and linkers. The following variables can be used to tweak the wrappers.

ECHO_WRAPPER_MSG

The command used to print progress messages. Does nothing by default. Set to `${ECHO}` to see the progress messages.

WRAPPER_DEBUG

This variable can be set to `yes` (default) or `no`, depending on whether you want additional information in the wrapper log file.

WRAPPER_UPDATE_CACHE

This variable can be set to `yes` or `no`, depending on whether the wrapper should use its cache, which will improve the speed. The default value is `yes`, but is forced to `no` if the platform does not support it.

WRAPPER_REORDER_CMDS

A list of reordering commands. A reordering command has the form `reorder:l:lib1:lib2`. It ensures that that `-llib1` occurs before `-llib2`.

13.11. The *configure* phase

Most pieces of software need information on the header files, system calls, and library routines which are available on the platform they run on. The process of determining this information is known as configuration, and is usually automated. In most cases, a script is supplied with the distfiles, and its invocation results in generation of header files, Makefiles, etc.

If the package contains a configure script, this can be invoked by setting `HAS_CONFIGURE` to “yes”. If the configure script is a GNU autoconf script, you should set `GNU_CONFIGURE` to “yes” instead.

In the `do-configure` stage, a rough equivalent of the following command is run. See `mk/configure/configure.mk`, target `do-configure-script` for the exact definition.

```
.for dir in ${CONFIGURE_DIRS}
    cd ${WRKSRC} && cd ${dir} \
    && env ${CONFIGURE_ENV} \
        ${CONFIG_SHELL} ${CONFIGURE_SCRIPT} ${CONFIGURE_ARGS}
.endfor
```

`CONFIGURE_DIRS` (default: “.”) is a list of pathnames relative to `WRKSRC`. In each of these directories, the configure script is run with the environment `CONFIGURE_ENV` and arguments `CONFIGURE_ARGS`. The variables `CONFIGURE_ENV`, `CONFIGURE_SCRIPT` (default: “./configure”) and `CONFIGURE_ARGS` may all be changed by the package.

If the program uses the Perl way of configuration (mainly Perl modules, but not only), i.e. a file called `Makefile.PL`, it should include `../lang/perl5/module.mk`. To set any parameter for `Makefile.PL` use the `MAKE_PARAMS` variable (e.g., `MAKE_PARAMS+=foo=bar`).

If the program uses an `Imakefile` for configuration, the appropriate steps can be invoked by setting `USE_IMAKE` to “yes”. If you only need `xmkmf`, add it to `USE_TOOLS`. You can add variables to `xmkmf`’s environment by adding them to the `SCRIPTS_ENV` variable.

If the program uses `cmake` for configuration, the appropriate steps can be invoked by setting `USE_CMAKE` to “yes”. You can add variables to `cmake`’s environment by adding them to the `CONFIGURE_ENV` variable and arguments to `cmake` by adding them to the `CMAKE_ARGS` variable. The top directory argument is given by the `CMAKE_ARG_PATH` variable, that defaults to “.” (relative to `CONFIGURE_DIRS`)

If there is no configure step at all, set `NO_CONFIGURE` to “yes”.

13.12. The *build* phase

For building a package, a rough equivalent of the following code is executed; see `mk/build/build.mk`, target `do-build` for the exact definition.

```
.for dir in ${BUILD_DIRS}
    cd ${WRKSRV} && cd ${dir} \
    && env ${MAKE_ENV} \
        ${MAKE_PROGRAM} ${MAKE_FLAGS} ${BUILD_MAKE_FLAGS} \
        -f ${MAKE_FILE} \
        ${BUILD_TARGET}
.endfor
```

`BUILD_DIRS` (default: “.”) is a list of pathnames relative to `WRKSRV`. In each of these directories, `MAKE_PROGRAM` is run with the environment `MAKE_ENV` and arguments `BUILD_MAKE_FLAGS`. The variables `MAKE_ENV`, `BUILD_MAKE_FLAGS`, `MAKE_FILE` and `BUILD_TARGET` may all be changed by the package.

The default value of `MAKE_PROGRAM` is “gmake” if `USE_TOOLS` contains “gmake”, “make” otherwise. The default value of `MAKE_FILE` is “Makefile”, and `BUILD_TARGET` defaults to “all”.

If there is no build step at all, set `NO_BUILD` to “yes”.

13.13. The *test* phase

[TODO]

13.14. The *install* phase

Once the build stage has completed, the final step is to install the software in public directories, so users can access the programs and files.

In the *install* phase, a rough equivalent of the following code is executed; see `mk/install/install.mk`, target `do-install` for the exact definition. Additionally, before and after this code, several consistency checks are run against the files-to-be-installed, see `mk/check/*.mk` for details.

```
.for dir in ${INSTALL_DIRS}
```

```

    cd ${WRKSRCSRC} && cd ${dir} \
    && env ${INSTALL_ENV} ${MAKE_ENV} \
        ${MAKE_PROGRAM} ${MAKE_FLAGS} ${INSTALL_MAKE_FLAGS} \
        -f ${MAKE_FILE} ${INSTALL_TARGET}
endfor

```

The variable's meanings are analogous to the ones in the *build* phase. `INSTALL_DIRS` defaults to `BUILD_DIRS`. `INSTALL_TARGET` is “install” by default, plus “install.man” if `USE_IMAKE` is defined and `NO_INSTALL_MANPAGES` is not defined.

In the *install* phase, the following variables are useful. They are all variations of the `install(1)` command that have the owner, group and permissions preset. `INSTALL` is the plain install command. The specialized variants, together with their intended use, are:

`INSTALL_PROGRAM_DIR`

directories that contain binaries

`INSTALL_SCRIPT_DIR`

directories that contain scripts

`INSTALL_LIB_DIR`

directories that contain shared and static libraries

`INSTALL_DATA_DIR`

directories that contain data files

`INSTALL_MAN_DIR`

directories that contain man pages

`INSTALL_GAME_DIR`

directories that contain data files for games

`INSTALL_PROGRAM`

binaries that can be stripped from debugging symbols

`INSTALL_SCRIPT`

binaries that cannot be stripped

`INSTALL_GAME`

game binaries

`INSTALL_LIB`

shared and static libraries

`INSTALL_DATA`

data files

`INSTALL_GAME_DATA`

data files for games

`INSTALL_MAN`

man pages

Some other variables are:

`INSTALL_UNSTRIPPED`

If set to `yes`, do not run `strip(1)` when installing binaries. Any debugging sections and symbols present in binaries will be preserved.

`INSTALLATION_DIRS`

A list of directories relative to `PREFIX` that are created by `pkgsrc` at the beginning of the *install* phase. The package is supposed to create all needed directories itself before installing files to it and list all other directories here.

In the rare cases that a package shouldn't install anything, set `NO_INSTALL` to “yes”. This is mostly relevant for packages in the *regress* category.

13.15. The *package* phase

Once the install stage has completed, a binary package of the installed files can be built. These binary packages can be used for quick installation without previous compilation, e.g. by the **make bin-install** or by using **pkg_add**.

By default, the binary packages are created in `${PACKAGES}/All` and symlinks are created in `${PACKAGES}/category`, one for each category in the `CATEGORIES` variable. `PACKAGES` defaults to `pkgsrc/packages`.

13.16. Cleaning up

Once you're finished with a package, you can clean the work directory by running **make clean**. If you want to clean the work directories of all dependencies too, use **make clean-depends**.

13.17. Other helpful targets

`pre/post-*`

For any of the main targets described in the previous section (`configure`, `build`, `install`, etc.), two auxiliary targets exist with “pre-” and “post-” used as a prefix for the main target's name. These targets are invoked before and after the main target is called, allowing extra configuration or installation steps be performed from a package's Makefile, for example, which a program's configure script or install target omitted.

About 5% of the pkgsrc packages define their custom post-extract target, another 5% define pre-configure, and 10% define post-install. The other pre/post-* targets are defined even less often.

do-*

Should one of the main targets do the wrong thing, and should there be no variable to fix this, you can redefine it with the do-* target. (Note that redefining the target itself instead of the do-* target is a bad idea, as the pre-* and post-* targets won't be called anymore, etc.)

About 15% of the pkgsrc packages override the default do-install, the other do-* targets are overridden even less often.

reinstall

If you did a **make install** and you noticed some file was not installed properly, you can repeat the installation with this target, which will ignore the “already installed” flag.

This is the default value of `DEPENDS_TARGET` except in the case of **make update** and **make package**, where the defaults are “package” and “update”, respectively.

deinstall

This target does a `pkg_delete(1)` in the current directory, effectively de-installing the package. The following variables can be used to tune the behaviour:

PKG_VERBOSE

Add a “-v” to the `pkg_delete(1)` command.

DEINSTALLDEPENDS

Remove all packages that require (depend on) the given package. This can be used to remove any packages that may have been pulled in by a given package, e.g. if **make deinstall** **DEINSTALLDEPENDS=1** is done in `pkgsrc/x11/kde`, this is likely to remove whole KDE. Works by adding “-R” to the `pkg_delete(1)` command line.

bin-install

Install a binary package from local disk and via FTP from a list of sites (see the `BINPKG_SITES` variable), and do a **make package** if no binary package is available anywhere. The arguments given to **pkg_add** can be set via `BIN_INSTALL_FLAGS` e.g., to do verbose operation, etc.

install-clean

This target removes the state files for the “install” and later phases so that the “install” target may be re-invoked. This can be used after editing the `PLIST` to install the package without rebuilding it.

build-clean

This target removes the state files for the “build” and later phases so that the “build” target may be re-invoked.

update

This target causes the current package to be updated to the latest version. The package and all depending packages first get de-installed, then current versions of the corresponding packages get compiled and installed. This is similar to manually noting which packages are currently installed, then performing a series of **make deinstall** and **make install** (or whatever `UPDATE_TARGET` is set to) for these packages.

You can use the “update” target to resume package updating in case a previous **make update** was interrupted for some reason. However, in this case, make sure you don’t call **make clean** or otherwise remove the list of dependent packages in `WRKDIR`. Otherwise, you lose the ability to automatically update the current package along with the dependent packages you have installed.

Resuming an interrupted **make update** will only work as long as the package tree remains unchanged. If the source code for one of the packages to be updated has been changed, resuming **make update** will most certainly fail!

The following variables can be used either on the command line or in `mk.conf` to alter the behaviour of **make update**:

UPDATE_TARGET

Install target to recursively use for the updated package and the dependent packages. Defaults to `DEPENDS_TARGET` if set, “install” otherwise for **make update**. Other good targets are “package” or “bin-install”. Do not set this to “update” or you will get stuck in an endless loop!

NOCLEAN

Don’t clean up after updating. Useful if you want to leave the work sources of the updated packages around for inspection or other purposes. Be sure you eventually clean up the source tree (see the “clean-update” target below) or you may run into troubles with old source code still lying around on your next **make** or **make update**.

REINSTALL

Deinstall each package before installing (making `DEPENDS_TARGET`). This may be necessary if the “clean-update” target (see below) was called after interrupting a running **make update**.

DEPENDS_TARGET

Allows you to disable recursion and hardcode the target for packages. The default is “update” for the update target, facilitating a recursive update of prerequisite packages. Only set `DEPENDS_TARGET` if you want to disable recursive updates. Use `UPDATE_TARGET` instead to just set a specific target for each package to be installed during **make update** (see above).

clean-update

Clean the source tree for all packages that would get updated if **make update** was called from the current directory. This target should not be used if the current package (or any of its depending packages) have already been de-installed (e.g., after calling **make update**) or you may lose some packages you intended to update. As a rule of thumb: only use this target *before* the first time you run **make update** and only if you have a dirty package tree (e.g., if you used `NOCLEAN`).

If you are unsure about whether your tree is clean, you can either perform a **make clean** at the top of the tree, or use the following sequence of commands from the directory of the package you want to update (*before* running **make update** for the first time, otherwise you lose all the packages you wanted to update!):

```
# make clean-update
# make clean CLEANDEPENDS=YES
# make update
```

The following variables can be used either on the command line or in `mk.conf` to alter the behaviour of **make clean-update**:

`CLEAR_DIRLIST`

After **make clean**, do not reconstruct the list of directories to update for this package. Only use this if **make update** successfully installed all packages you wanted to update. Normally, this is done automatically on **make update**, but may have been suppressed by the `NOCLEAN` variable (see above).

replace

Update the installation of the current package. This differs from `update` in that it does not replace dependent packages. You will need to install `pkgtools/pkg_tarup` for this target to work.

Be careful when using this target! There are no guarantees that dependent packages will still work, in particular they will most certainly break if you **make replace** a library package whose shared library major version changed between your installed version and the new one. For this reason, this target is not officially supported and only recommended for advanced users.

info

This target invokes `pkg_info(1)` for the current package. You can use this to check which version of a package is installed.

index

This is a top-level command, i.e. it should be used in the `pkgsrc` directory. It creates a database of all packages in the local `pkgsrc` tree, including dependencies, comment, maintainer, and some other useful information. Individual entries are created by running **make describe** in the packages' directories. This index file is saved as `pkgsrc/INDEX`. It can be displayed in verbose format by running **make print-index**. You can search in it with **make search key=something**. You can extract a list of all packages that depend on a particular one by running **make show-deps PKG=somepackage**.

Running this command takes a very long time, some hours even on fast machines!

readme

This target generates a `index.html` file, which can be viewed using a browser such as `www/firefox` or `www/links`. The generated files contain references to any packages which are in the `PACKAGES` directory on the local host. The generated files can be made to refer to URLs based on `FTP_PKG_URL_HOST` and `FTP_PKG_URL_DIR`. For example, if I wanted to generate

`index.html` files which pointed to binary packages on the local machine, in the directory `/usr/packages`, set `FTP_PKG_URL_HOST=file://localhost` and `FTP_PKG_URL_DIR=/usr/packages`. The `$(PACKAGES)` directory and its subdirectories will be searched for all the binary packages.

The target can be run at the toplevel or in category directories, in which case it descends recursively.

readme-all

This is a top-level command, run it in `pkgsrc`. Use this target to create a file `README-all.html` which contains a list of all packages currently available in the NetBSD Packages Collection, together with the category they belong to and a short description. This file is compiled from the `pkgsrc/*/index.html` files, so be sure to run this *after* a **make readme**.

cdrom-readme

This is very much the same as the “readme” target (see above), but is to be used when generating a `pkgsrc` tree to be written to a CD-ROM. This target also produces `index.html` files, and can be made to refer to URLs based on `CDROM_PKG_URL_HOST` and `CDROM_PKG_URL_DIR`.

show-distfiles

This target shows which distfiles and patchfiles are needed to build the package (`ALLFILES`, which contains all `DISTFILES` and `PATCHFILES`, but not `patches/*`).

show-downlevel

This target shows nothing if the package is not installed. If a version of this package is installed, but is not the version provided in this version of `pkgsrc`, then a warning message is displayed. This target can be used to show which of your installed packages are downlevel, and so the old versions can be deleted, and the current ones added.

show-pkgsrc-dir

This target shows the directory in the `pkgsrc` hierarchy from which the package can be built and installed. This may not be the same directory as the one from which the package was installed. This target is intended to be used by people who may wish to upgrade many packages on a single host, and can be invoked from the top-level `pkgsrc` Makefile by using the “show-host-specific-pkgs” target.

show-installed-depends

This target shows which installed packages match the current package’s `DEPENDS`. Useful if out of date dependencies are causing build problems.

print-build-depends-list

This target shows the list of packages that the current package depends on for building.

print-run-depends-list

This target shows the list of packages that the current package depends on for running.

check-shlibs

After a package is installed, check all its binaries and (on ELF platforms) shared libraries to see if they find the shared libs they need. Run by default if `PKG_DEVELOPER` is set in `mk.conf`.

print-PLIST

After a “make install” from a new or upgraded pkg, this prints out an attempt to generate a new `PLIST` from a **find -newer work/extract_done**. An attempt is made to care for shared libs etc., but it is *strongly* recommended to review the result before putting it into `PLIST`. On upgrades, it’s useful to diff the output of this command against an already existing `PLIST` file.

If the package installs files via `tar(1)` or other methods that don’t update file access times, be sure to add these files manually to your `PLIST`, as the “find -newer” command used by this target won’t catch them!

See Section 19.3 for more information on this target.

Chapter 14.

Creating a new pkgsrc package from scratch

When you find a package that is not yet in pkgsrc, you most likely have a URL from where you can download the source code. Starting with this URL, creating a package involves only a few steps.

1. In your `mk.conf`, set `PKG_DEVELOPER=yes` to enable the basic quality checks.
2. Install the package `meta-pkgs/pkg_developer`, which among others will install the utilities **url2pkg**, **pkglint**, **pkgvi** and **mkpatches**:

```
$ cd /usr/pkgsrc  
$ (cd meta-pkgs/pkg_developer && bmake update)
```
3. Choose one of the top-level directories as the category in which you want to place your package. You can also create a directory of your own (maybe called `local`). Change into that category directory:

```
$ cd category
```
4. Run the program **url2pkg**, passing as argument the URL of the distribution file (in most cases a `.tar.gz` file). This will download the distribution file and create the necessary files of the package, based on what's in the distribution file:

```
$ url2pkg https://www.example.org/packages/package-1.0.tar.gz
```
5. Examine the extracted files to determine the dependencies of your package. Ideally, this is mentioned in some `README` file, but things may differ. For each of these dependencies, look where it exists in pkgsrc, and if there is a file called `buildlink3.mk` in that directory, add a line to your package `Makefile` which includes that file just before the last line. If the `buildlink3.mk` file does not exist, it must be created first. The `buildlink3.mk` file makes sure that the package's include files and libraries are provided.

If you just need binaries from a dependent package, add a `DEPENDS` line to the `Makefile`, which specifies the version of the dependency and where it can be found in pkgsrc. This line should be placed in the third paragraph. If the dependency is only needed for building the package, but not when using it, use `TOOL_DEPENDS` or `BUILD_DEPENDS` instead of `DEPENDS`. The difference between `TOOL_DEPENDS` and `BUILD_DEPENDS` occurs when cross-compiling: `TOOL_DEPENDS` are *native* packages, i.e. packages for the platform where the package is built; `BUILD_DEPENDS` are *target* packages, i.e. packages for the platform for which the package is built. There is also `TEST_DEPENDS`, which specifies a dependency used only for testing the resulting package built, using the upstream project's included test suite, on the native platform. Your package may then look like this:

```
[...]
```

```
TOOL_DEPENDS+= libxslt-[0-9]*:../textproc/libxslt
```

```
DEPENDS+=      screen-[0-9]*:../../misc/screen
DEPENDS+=      screen>=4.0:../../misc/screen
```

```
[...]
```

```
.include "../category/package/buildlink3.mk"
.include "../devel/glib2/buildlink3.mk"
.include "../mk/bsd.pkg.mk"
```

6. Run **pkglint** to see what things still need to be done to make your package a “good” one. If you don’t know what pkglint’s warnings want to tell you, try **pkglint --explain** or **pkglint -e**, which outputs additional explanations.
7. In many cases the package is not yet ready to build. You can find instructions for the most common cases in the next section, Section 14.1. After you have followed the instructions over there, you can hopefully continue here.
8. Run **bmake clean** to clean the working directory from the extracted files. Besides these files, a lot of cache files and other system information have been saved in the working directory, which may have become outdated after you edited the Makefile.
9. Now, run **bmake** to build the package. For the various things that can go wrong in this phase, consult Chapter 21.

If the extracted files from the package need to be fixed, run multiple rounds of these commands:

```
$ bmake
$ pkgvi ${WRKSRCSRC}/some/file/that/does/not/compile
$ mkpatches
$ bmake mps
$ bmake clean
```

10. When the package builds fine, the next step is to install the package. Run **bmake install** and hope that everything works.
11. Up to now, the file `PLIST`, which contains a list of the files that are installed by the package, is nearly empty. Run **bmake print-PLIST >PLIST** to generate a probably correct list. Check the file using your preferred text editor to see if the list of files looks plausible.
12. Run **pkglint** again to see if the generated `PLIST` contains garbage or not.
13. When you ran **bmake install**, the package had been registered in the database of installed files, but with an empty list of files. To fix this, run **bmake deinstall** and **bmake install** again. Now the package is registered with the list of files from `PLIST`.
14. Run **bmake clean update** to run everything from above again in a single step, making sure that the `PLIST` is correct and the whole package is created as intended.
15. Run **pkglint** to see if there’s anything left to do.
16. Commit the package to pkgsrc-wip or main pkgsrc; see Chapter 23.

14.1. Common types of packages

14.1.1. Python modules and programs

Python modules and programs packages are easily created using a set of predefined variables.

If some Python versions are not supported by the software, set the `PYTHON_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE` variable to the Python versions that are not supported, e.g.

```
PYTHON_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE=      27
```

If the packaged software is a Python module, include one of `../../lang/python/egg.mk` or `../../lang/python/extension.mk`.

Most Python packages use `setuptools` (“eggs”). If the packaged software is using `setuptools`, you only need to include “`../../lang/python/egg.mk`”.

Either way, the package directory should be called “py-software” and `PKGNAME` should be set to “`${PYPKGPREFIX}-${DISTNAME}`”, e.g.

```
DISTNAME=    foopymodule-1.2.10
PKGNAME=     ${PYPKGPREFIX}-${DISTNAME}
```

If it is an application, include “`../../lang/python/application.mk`”. In order to correctly set the path to the Python interpreter, use the `REPLACE_PYTHON` variable and set it to the list of files (paths relative to `WRKSRCD`) that must be corrected. For example:

```
REPLACE_PYTHON=    *.py
```

Some Python modules have separate distributions for Python-2.x and Python-3.x support. In `pkgsrc` this is handled by the `versioned_dependencies.mk` file. Set `PYTHON_VERSIONED_DEPENDENCIES` to the list of packages that should be depended upon and include “`../../lang/python/versioned_dependencies.mk`”, then the `pkgsrc` infrastructure will depend on the appropriate package version. For example:

```
PYTHON_VERSIONED_DEPENDENCIES=dialog
```

Look inside `versioned_dependencies.mk` for a list of supported packages.

14.1.2. R packages

Simple R packages from CRAN

(https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/available_packages_by_name.html) are handled automatically by **R2pkg**, which is available in `pkgtools/R2pkg`. Individual packages (and optionally their dependencies) may be created and updated. R packages generally follow the same form, and most of the relevant information needed is contained in a `DESCRIPTION` file as part of each R package on CRAN (https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/available_packages_by_name.html). Consequently, **R2pkg**

downloads that information and creates or updates a package in the canonical form. The resulting package should be reviewed for correctness.

14.1.3. TeXlive packages

TeXlive packages from CTAN (<https://www.ctan.org/>) are handled automatically by **texlive2pkg**, which is available in `pkgtools/texlive2pkg`.

If the TeXlive package name is not known, it may be useful to search CTAN (<https://www.ctan.org/>). A “Contained in” field on the package page typically identifies the basename of the package file in the TeXlive archive (<https://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/systems/texlive/tlnet/archive>).

If the TeXlive package name is known, download the files from the TeXlive archive (<https://www.ctan.org/tex-archive/systems/texlive/tlnet/archive>). For package `foo`, you will need to download `foo.tar.xz`. Most TeXlive packages also have associated documentation packages, so download `foo.doc.tar.xz` at the same time. These files should be placed in the appropriate category directory, which is often but not always `print`. Then run the following command in the category directory.

```
texlive2pkg foo.tar.xz foo.doc.tar.xz
```

This will create two packages, `tex-foo` and `tex-foo-doc`. Be sure to check that both packages are correct.

Finally, CTAN (<https://www.ctan.org/>) currently does not include version information in package filenames and changes their contents periodically when updates occur. Consequently, `pkgsrc` avoids downloading distfiles directly from CTAN (<https://www.ctan.org/>) and instead relies on the `pkgsrc` archives. For each new or updated TeXlive package, e.g., the main one and the corresponding documentation, upload the distfiles with the following command in each package directory.

```
make upload-distfiles
```

14.2. Examples

14.2.1. How the `www/nvu` package came into `pkgsrc`

14.2.1.1. The initial package

Looking at the file `pkgsrc/doc/TODO`, I saw that the “nvu” package has not yet been imported into `pkgsrc`. As the description says it has to do with the web, the obvious choice for the category is “www”.

```
$ mkdir www/nvu
$ cd www/nvu
```

The web site says that the sources are available as a tar file, so I fed that URL to the **url2pkg** program:

```
$ url2pkg http://cvs.nvu.com/download/nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
```

My editor popped up, and I added a `PKGNAME` line below the `DISTNAME` line, as the package name should not have the word “sources” in it. I also filled in the `MAINTAINER`, `HOMEPAGE` and `COMMENT` fields. Then the package Makefile looked like that:

```
# $NetBSD $
#

DISTNAME=      nvu-1.0-sources
PKGNAME=       nvu-1.0
CATEGORIES=    www
MASTER_SITES=  http://cvs.nvu.com/download/
EXTRACT_SUFX=  .tar.bz2

MAINTAINER=    rillig@NetBSD.org
HOMEPAGE=      http://cvs.nvu.com/
COMMENT=       Web Authoring System

# url2pkg-marker (please do not remove this line.)
.include "../mk/bsd.pkg.mk"
```

On the first line of output above, an artificial space has been added between NetBSD and \$, this is a workaround to prevent CVS expanding to the filename of the guide.

Then, I quit the editor and watched pkgsrc downloading a large source archive:

```
url2pkg> Running "make makesum" ...
=> Required installed package digest>=20010302: digest-20060826 found
=> Fetching nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
Requesting http://cvs.nvu.com/download/nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
100% |*****| 28992 KB 150.77 KB/s00:00 ETA
29687976 bytes retrieved in 03:12 (150.77 KB/s)
url2pkg> Running "make extract" ...
=> Required installed package digest>=20010302: digest-20060826 found
=> Checksum SHA1 OK for nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
=> Checksum RMD160 OK for nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
work.bacc -> /tmp/roland/pkgsrc/www/nvu/work.bacc
==> Installing dependencies for nvu-1.0
==> Overriding tools for nvu-1.0
==> Extracting for nvu-1.0
url2pkg> Adjusting the Makefile.
```

Remember to correct `CATEGORIES`, `HOMEPAGE`, `COMMENT`, and `DESCR` when you’re done!

Good luck! (See `pkgsrc/doc/pkgsrc.txt` for some more help :-)

14.2.1.2. Fixing all kinds of problems to make the package work

Now that the package has been extracted, let’s see what’s inside it. The package has a `README.txt`, but that only says something about mozilla, so it’s probably useless for seeing what dependencies this package has. But since there is a GNU configure script in the package, let’s hope that it will complain about everything it needs.

```

$ bmake
=> Required installed package digest>=20010302: digest-20060826 found
=> Checksum SHA1 OK for nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
=> Checksum RMD160 OK for nvu-1.0-sources.tar.bz2
==> Patching for nvu-1.0
==> Creating toolchain wrappers for nvu-1.0
==> Configuring for nvu-1.0
[...]
configure: error: Perl 5.004 or higher is required.
[...]
WARNING: Please add USE_TOOLS+=perl to the package Makefile.
[...]

```

That worked quite well. So I opened the package Makefile in my editor, and since it already has a `USE_TOOLS` line, I just appended “perl” to it. Since the dependencies of the package have changed now, and since a perl wrapper is automatically installed in the “tools” phase, I need to build the package from scratch.

```

$ bmake clean
==> Cleaning for nvu-1.0
$ bmake
[...]
*** /tmp/roland/pkgsrc/www/nvu/work.bacc/.tools/bin/make is not \
GNU Make.  You will not be able to build Mozilla without GNU Make.
[...]

```

So I added “gmake” to the `USE_TOOLS` line and tried again (from scratch).

```

[...]
checking for GTK - version >= 1.2.0... no
*** Could not run GTK test program, checking why...
[...]

```

Now to the other dependencies. The first question is: Where is the GTK package hidden in pkgsrc?

```

$ echo ../../*/gtk*
[many packages ...]
$ echo ../../*/gtk
../../x11/gtk
$ echo ../../*/gtk2
../../x11/gtk2
$ echo ../../*/gtk2/bui*
../../x11/gtk2/buildlink3.mk

```

The first try was definitely too broad. The second one had exactly one result, which is very good. But there is one pitfall with GNOME packages. Before GNOME 2 had been released, there were already many GNOME 1 packages in pkgsrc. To be able to continue to use these packages, the GNOME 2 packages were imported as separate packages, and their names usually have a “2” appended. So I checked whether this was the case here, and indeed it was.

Since the GTK2 package has a `buildlink3.mk` file, adding the dependency is very easy. I just inserted an `.include` line before the last line of the package Makefile, so that it now looks like this:

```
[...]
.include "../x11/gtk2/buildlink3.mk"
.include "../mk/bsd.pkg.mk
```

After another **bmake clean && bmake**, the answer was:

```
[...]
checking for gtk-config... /home/roland/pkg/bin/gtk-config
checking for GTK - version >= 1.2.0... no
*** Could not run GTK test program, checking why...
*** The test program failed to compile or link. See the file config.log for the
*** exact error that occurred. This usually means GTK was incorrectly installed
*** or that you have moved GTK since it was installed. In the latter case, you
*** may want to edit the gtk-config script: /home/roland/pkg/bin/gtk-config
configure: error: Test for GTK failed.
[...]
```

In this particular case, the assumption that “every package prefers GNOME 2” had been wrong. The first of the lines above told me that this package really wanted to have the GNOME 1 version of GTK. If the package had looked for GTK2, it would have looked for **pkg-config** instead of **gtk-config**. So I changed the `x11/gtk2` to `x11/gtk` in the package Makefile, and tried again.

```
[...]
cc -o xpidl.o -c -DOSTYPE=\"NetBSD3\" -DOSARCH=\"NetBSD\" [...]
In file included from xpidl.c:42:
xpidl.h:53:24: libIDL/IDL.h: No such file or directory
In file included from xpidl.c:42:
xpidl.h:132: error: parse error before "IDL_ns"
[...]
```

The package still does not find all of its dependencies. Now the question is: Which package provides the `libIDL/IDL.h` header file?

```
$ echo ../../*/idl*
../../devel/py-idle ../../wip/idled ../../x11/acidlaunch
$ echo ../../*/IDL*
../../net/libIDL
```

Let’s take the one from the second try. So I included the `../../net/libIDL/buildlink3.mk` file and tried again. But the error didn’t change. After digging through some of the code, I concluded that the build process of the package was broken and couldn’t have ever worked, but since the Mozilla source tree is quite large, I didn’t want to fix it. So I added the following to the package Makefile and tried again:

```
CPPFLAGS+=          -I${BUILDLINK_PREFIX.libIDL}/include/libIDL-2.0
BUILDLINK_TRANSFORM+= 1:IDL:IDL-2
```

The latter line is needed because the package expects the library `libIDL.so`, but only `libIDL-2.so` is available. So I told the compiler wrapper to rewrite that on the fly.

The next problem was related to a recent change of the FreeType interface. I looked up in `www/seamoney` which patch files were relevant for this issue and copied them to the `patches` directory. Then I retried, fixed the patches so that they applied cleanly and retried again. This time, everything worked.

14.2.1.3. Installing the package

```
$ bmake CHECK_FILES=no install  
[...]  
$ bmake print-PLIST >PLIST  
$ bmake deinstall  
$ bmake install
```

Chapter 15.

Programming in Makefiles

Pkgsrc consists of many `Makefile` fragments, each of which forms a well-defined part of the pkgsrc system. Using the `make(1)` system as a programming language for a big system like pkgsrc requires some discipline to keep the code correct and understandable.

The basic ingredients for `Makefile` programming are variables and shell commands. Among these shell commands may even be more complex ones like `awk(1)` programs. To make sure that every shell command runs as intended it is necessary to quote all variables correctly when they are used.

This chapter describes some patterns that appear quite often in `Makefiles`, including the pitfalls that come along with them.

15.1. Caveats

- When you are creating a file as a target of a rule, always write the data to a temporary file first and finally rename that file. Otherwise there might occur an error in the middle of generating the file, and when the user runs `make(1)` for the second time, the file exists and will not be regenerated properly.

Example:

wrong:

```
@echo "line 1" > ${.TARGET}
@echo "line 2" >> ${.TARGET}
@false
```

correct:

```
@echo "line 1" > ${.TARGET}.tmp
@echo "line 2" >> ${.TARGET}.tmp
@false
@mv ${.TARGET}.tmp ${.TARGET}
```

When you run **make wrong** twice, the file `wrong` will exist, although there was an error message in the first run. On the other hand, running **make correct** gives an error message twice, as expected.

You might remember that `make(1)` sometimes removes `${.TARGET}` in case of error, but this only happens when it is interrupted, for example by pressing `Ctrl+C`. This does *not* happen when one of the commands fails (like `false(1)` above).

15.2. Makefile variables

`Makefile` variables contain strings that can be processed using the five operators `=`, `+=`, `?=`, `:=` and `!=`, which are described in the `make(1)` man page.

When a variable's value is parsed from a `Makefile`, the hash character `#` and the backslash character `\` are handled specially. If a backslash is the last character in a line, that backslash is removed from the line and the line continues with the next line of the file.

The `#` character starts a comment that reaches until the end of the line. To get an actual `#` character, such as in a URL, write `\#` instead.

The evaluation of variables either happens immediately or lazy. It happens immediately when the variable occurs on the right-hand side of the `:=` or the `!=` operator, in a `.if` condition or a `.for` loop. In the other cases, it is evaluated lazily.

Some of the modifiers split the string into words and then operate on the words, others operate on the string as a whole. When a string is split into words, double quotes and single quotes are interpreted as delimiters, just like in `sh(1)`.

15.2.1. Naming conventions

- All variable names starting with an underscore are reserved for use by the `pkgsrc` infrastructure. They shall not be used by packages.
- In `.for` loops you should use lowercase variable names for the iteration variables.
- All list variables should have a plural name, such as `PKG_OPTIONS` or `DISTFILES`.

15.3. Code snippets

15.3.1. Adding things to a list

When adding a string that possibly contains whitespace or quotes to a list (example 1), it must be quoted using the `:Q` modifier.

When adding another list to a list (example 2), it must not be quoted, since its elements are already quoted.

```
STRING=          foo * bar `date`
LIST=            # empty
ANOTHER_LIST=    a=b c=d

LIST+=           ${STRING:Q}          # 1
LIST+=           ${ANOTHER_LIST}      # 2
```

15.3.2. Echoing a string exactly as-is

Echoing a string containing special characters needs special work.

```
STRING=          foo bar <      > * `date` $$HOME ' "
EXAMPLE_ENV=     string=${STRING:Q} x=multiple\ quoted\ words

all:
```

```

echo ${STRING}                # 1
echo ${STRING:Q}              # 2
printf '%s\n' ${STRING:Q}"    # 3
env ${EXAMPLE_ENV} sh -c 'echo "$$string"; echo "$$x"'    # 4

```

Example 1 leads to a syntax error in the shell, as the characters are just copied.

Example 2 quotes the string so that the shell interprets it correctly. But the echo command may additionally interpret strings with a leading dash or those containing backslashes.

Example 3 can handle arbitrary strings, since printf(1) only interprets the format string, but not the next argument. The trailing single quotes handle the case when the string is empty. In that case, the :Q modifier would result in an empty string too, which would then be skipped by the shell. For printf(1) this doesn't make a difference, but other programs may care.

In example 4, the EXAMPLE_ENV does not need to be quoted because the quoting has already been done when adding elements to the list.

15.3.3. Passing CFLAGS to GNU configure scripts

When passing CFLAGS or similar variables to a GNU-style configure script (especially those that call other configure scripts), it must not have leading or trailing whitespace, since otherwise the configure script gets confused. To trim leading and trailing whitespace, use the :M modifier, as in the following example:

```

CPPFLAGS=                    # empty
CPPFLAGS+=                  -Wundef -DPREFIX=\"${PREFIX}\"
CPPFLAGS+=                  ${MY_CPPFLAGS}

CONFIGURE_ARGS+=            CPPFLAGS=${CPPFLAGS:M*:Q}

all:
    echo x${CPPFLAGS:Q}x      # leading and trailing whitespace
    echo x${CONFIGURE_ARGS:Q}x # properly trimmed

```

In this example, CPPFLAGS has both leading and trailing whitespace because the += operator always adds a space.

15.3.4. Handling possibly empty variables

When a possibly empty variable is used in a shell program, it may lead to a syntax error.

```

EGFILES=                    # empty

install-examples:          # produces a syntax error in the shell
    for egfile in ${EGFILES}; do
        echo "Installing $$egfile";
    done

```

The shell only sees the text for egfile in ; do, since \${EGFILES} is replaced with an empty string by make(1). To fix this syntax error, use one of the snippets below.

```

EMPTY=          # empty

install-examples:
    for egfile in ${EGFILES} ""; do          \
        [ -n "$$egfile" ] || continue;      \
        echo "Installing $$egfile";          \
    done

```

In this case, an empty string is appended to the iteration list (to prevent the syntax error) and filtered out later.

```

EGFILES=        # empty

install-examples:
    .for egfile in ${EGFILES}
        echo "Installing ${egfile}"
    .endfor

```

If one of the filenames contains special characters, it should be enclosed in single or double quotes.

To have a shell command test whether a make variable is empty, use the following code: `${TEST} -z ${POSSIBLY_EMPTY:Q} ""`.

Chapter 16.

Options handling

Many packages have the ability to be built to support different sets of features. `bsd.options.mk` is a framework in `pkgsrc` that provides generic handling of those options that determine different ways in which the packages can be built. It's possible for the user to specify exactly which sets of options will be built into a package or to allow a set of global default options apply.

There are two broad classes of behaviors that one might want to control via options. One is whether some particular feature is enabled in a program that will be built anyway, often by including or not including a dependency on some other package. The other is whether or not an additional program will be built as part of the package. Generally, it is better to make a split package for such additional programs instead of using options, because it enables binary packages to be built which can then be added separately. For example, the `foo` package might have minimal dependencies (those packages without which `foo` doesn't make sense), and then the `foo-gfoo` package might include the GTK frontend program `gfoo`. This is better than including a `gtk` option to `foo` that adds `gfoo`, because either that option is default, in which case binary users can't get `foo` without `gfoo`, or not default, in which case they can't get `gfoo`. With split packages, they can install `foo` without having GTK, and later decide to install `gfoo` (pulling in GTK at that time). This is an advantage to source users too, avoiding the need for rebuilds.

Plugins with widely varying dependencies should usually be split instead of options.

It is often more work to maintain split packages, especially if the upstream package does not support this. The decision of split vs. option should be made based on the likelihood that users will want or object to the various pieces, the size of the dependencies that are included, and the amount of work.

A further consideration is licensing. Non-free parts, or parts that depend on non-free dependencies (especially plugins) should almost always be split if feasible.

16.1. Global default options

Global default options are listed in `PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS`, which is a list of the options that should be built into every package if that option is supported. This variable should be set in `mk.conf`.

16.2. Converting packages to use `bsd.options.mk`

The following example shows how `bsd.options.mk` should be used by the hypothetical “wibble” package, either in the package Makefile, or in a file, e.g. `options.mk`, that is included by the main package Makefile.

```
PKG_OPTIONS_VAR=                PKG_OPTIONS.wibble
PKG_SUPPORTED_OPTIONS=          wibble-foo ldap
PKG_OPTIONS_OPTIONAL_GROUPS=    database
PKG_OPTIONS_GROUP.database=    mysql postgres
```

```

PKG_SUGGESTED_OPTIONS=      wibble-foo
PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_VARS+=   WIBBLE_USE_OPENLDAP:ldap
PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_OPTS+=   foo:wibble-foo

.include "../mk/bsd.prefs.mk"

# this package was previously named wibble2
.if defined(PKG_OPTIONS.wibble2)
PKG_LEGACY_OPTIONS+=        ${PKG_OPTIONS.wibble2}
PKG_OPTIONS_DEPRECATED_WARNINGS+= \
    "Deprecated variable PKG_OPTIONS.wibble2 used, use ${PKG_OPTIONS_VAR} instead."
.endif

.include "../mk/bsd.options.mk"

# Package-specific option-handling

###
### FOO support
###
.if !empty(PKG_OPTIONS:Mwibble-foo)
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=            --enable-foo
.endif

###
### LDAP support
###
.if !empty(PKG_OPTIONS:Mldap)
. include "../databases/openldap-client/buildlink3.mk"
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=            --enable-ldap=${BUILDLINK_PREFIX.openldap-client}
.endif

###
### database support
###
.if !empty(PKG_OPTIONS:Mmysql)
. include "../mk/mysql.buildlink3.mk"
.endif
.if !empty(PKG_OPTIONS:Mpgsql)
. include "../mk/pgsql.buildlink3.mk"
.endif

```

The first section contains the information about which build options are supported by the package, and any default options settings if needed.

1. `PKG_OPTIONS_VAR` is the name of the `make(1)` variable that the user can set to override the default options. It should be set to `PKG_OPTIONS.pkgbase`. Do not set it to `PKG_OPTIONS.${PKGBASE}`, since `PKGBASE` is not defined at the point where the options are processed.
2. `PKG_SUPPORTED_OPTIONS` is a list of build options supported by the package.

3. `PKG_OPTIONS_OPTIONAL_GROUPS` is a list of names of groups of mutually exclusive options. The options in each group are listed in `PKG_OPTIONS_GROUP.groupname`. The most specific setting of any option from the group takes precedence over all other options in the group. Options from the groups will be automatically added to `PKG_SUPPORTED_OPTIONS`.
4. `PKG_OPTIONS_REQUIRED_GROUPS` is like `PKG_OPTIONS_OPTIONAL_GROUPS`, but building the packages will fail if no option from the group is selected.
5. `PKG_OPTIONS_NONEMPTY_SETS` is a list of names of sets of options. At least one option from each set must be selected. The options in each set are listed in `PKG_OPTIONS_SET.setname`. Options from the sets will be automatically added to `PKG_SUPPORTED_OPTIONS`. Building the package will fail if no option from the set is selected.
6. `PKG_SUGGESTED_OPTIONS` is a list of build options which are enabled by default.
7. `PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_VARS` is a list of “*USE_VARIABLE:option*” pairs that map legacy `mk.conf` variables to their option counterparts. Pairs should be added with “+=” to keep the listing of global legacy variables. A warning will be issued if the user uses a legacy variable.
8. `PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_OPTS` is a list of “*old-option:new-option*” pairs that map options that have been renamed to their new counterparts. Pairs should be added with “+=” to keep the listing of global legacy options. A warning will be issued if the user uses a legacy option.
9. `PKG_LEGACY_OPTIONS` is a list of options implied by deprecated variables used. This can be used for cases that neither `PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_VARS` nor `PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_OPTS` can handle, e. g. when `PKG_OPTIONS_VAR` is renamed.
10. `PKG_OPTIONS_DEPRECATED_WARNINGS` is a list of warnings about deprecated variables or options used, and what to use instead.

A package should never modify `PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS` or the variable named in `PKG_OPTIONS_VAR`. These are strictly user-settable. To suggest a default set of options, use `PKG_SUGGESTED_OPTIONS`.

`PKG_OPTIONS_VAR` must be defined before including `bsd.options.mk`. If none of `PKG_SUPPORTED_OPTIONS`, `PKG_OPTIONS_OPTIONAL_GROUPS`, and `PKG_OPTIONS_REQUIRED_GROUPS` are defined (as can happen with platform-specific options if none of them is supported on the current platform), `PKG_OPTIONS` is set to the empty list and the package is otherwise treated as not using the options framework.

After the inclusion of `bsd.options.mk`, the variable `PKG_OPTIONS` contains the list of selected build options, properly filtered to remove unsupported and duplicate options.

The remaining sections contain the logic that is specific to each option. The correct way to check for an option is to check whether it is listed in `PKG_OPTIONS`:

```
.if !empty(PKG_OPTIONS:Moption)
```

16.3. Option Names

Options that enable similar features in different packages (like optional support for a library) should use a common name in all packages that support it (like the name of the library). If another package already has an option with the same meaning, use the same name.

Options that enable features specific to one package, where it's unlikely that another (unrelated) package has the same (or a similar) optional feature, should use a name prefixed with *pkgname-*.

If a group of related packages share an optional feature specific to that group, prefix it with the name of the “main” package (e. g. *djbbware-errno-hack*).

For new options, add a line to *mk/defaults/options.description*. Lines have two fields, separated by tab. The first field is the option name, the second its description. The description should be a whole sentence (starting with an uppercase letter and ending with a period) that describes what enabling the option does. E. g. “Enable ispell support.” The file is sorted by option names.

16.4. Determining the options of dependencies

When writing *buildlink3.mk* files, it is often necessary to list different dependencies based on the options with which the package was built. For querying these options, the file *pkgsrc/mk/pkg-build-options.mk* should be used. A typical example looks like this:

```
pkgbase := libpurple
.include "../../mk/pkg-build-options.mk"

.if !empty(PKG_BUILD_OPTIONS.libpurple:Mdbus)
...
.endif
```

Including *pkg-build-options.mk* here will set the variable *PKG_BUILD_OPTIONS.libpurple* to the build options of the *libpurple* package, which can then be queried like *PKG_OPTIONS* in the *options.mk* file. See the file *pkg-build-options.mk* for more details.

Chapter 17.

Tools needed for building or running

The `USE_TOOLS` definition is used both internally by `pkgsrc` and also for individual packages to define what commands are needed for building a package (like `TOOL_DEPENDS`) or for later run-time of an installed package (such as `DEPENDS`). If the native system provides an adequate tool, then in many cases, a `pkgsrc` package will not be used.

When building a package, the replacement tools are made available in a directory (as symlinks or wrapper scripts) that is early in the executable search path. Just like the `buildlink` system, this helps with consistent builds.

A tool may be needed to help build a specific package. For example, `perl`, GNU make (`gmake`) or `yacc` may be needed.

Also a tool may be needed, for example, because the native system's supplied tool may be inefficient for building a package with `pkgsrc`. For example, a package may need GNU `awk`, `bison` (instead of `yacc`) or a better `sed`.

The tools used by a package can be listed by running **`make show-tools`**.

17.1. Tools for `pkgsrc` builds

The default set of tools used by `pkgsrc` is defined in `bsd.pkg.mk`. This includes standard Unix tools, such as: **`cat`**, **`awk`**, **`chmod`**, **`test`**, and so on. These can be seen by running: **`make show-var VARNAME=USE_TOOLS`**.

If a package needs a specific program to build then the `USE_TOOLS` variable can be used to define the tools needed.

17.2. Tools needed by packages

In the following examples, the `:run` means that it is needed at run-time (and becomes a `DEPENDS`). The default is a build dependency which can be set with `:build`. (So in this example, it is the same as `gmake:build` and `pkg-config:build`.)

```
USE_TOOLS+=      gmake perl:run pkg-config
```

When using the tools framework, a `TOOLS_PATH.foo` variable is defined which contains the full path to the appropriate tool. For example, `TOOLS_PATH.bash` could be `"/bin/bash"` on Linux systems.

If you always need a `pkgsrc` version of the tool at run-time, then just use `DEPENDS` instead.

17.3. Tools provided by platforms

When improving or porting pkgsrc to a new platform, have a look at (or create) the corresponding platform specific make file fragment under `pkgsrc/mk/tools/tools.${OPSYS}.mk` which defines the name of the common tools. For example:

```
.if exists(/usr/bin/bzcat)
TOOLS_PLATFORM.bzcat?=      /usr/bin/bzcat
.elif exists(/usr/bin/bzip2)
TOOLS_PLATFORM.bzcat?=      /usr/bin/bzip2 -cd
.endif

TOOLS_PLATFORM.true?=      true          # shell builtin
```

Chapter 18.

Buildlink methodology

Buildlink is a framework in pkgsrc that controls what headers and libraries are seen by a package's configure and build processes. This is implemented in a two step process:

1. Symlink headers and libraries for dependencies into `BUILDLINK_DIR`, which by default is a subdirectory of `WRKDIR`.
2. Create wrapper scripts that are used in place of the normal compiler tools that translate `-I${LOCALBASE}/include` and `-L${LOCALBASE}/lib` into references to `BUILDLINK_DIR`. The wrapper scripts also make native compiler on some operating systems look like GCC, so that packages that expect GCC won't require modifications to build with those native compilers.

This normalizes the environment in which a package is built so that the package may be built consistently despite what other software may be installed. Please note that the normal system header and library paths, e.g. `/usr/include`, `/usr/lib`, etc., are always searched -- buildlink3 is designed to insulate the package build from non-system-supplied software.

18.1. Converting packages to use buildlink3

The process of converting packages to use the buildlink3 framework ("bl3ifying") is fairly straightforward. The things to keep in mind are:

1. Ensure that the build always calls the wrapper scripts instead of the actual toolchain. Some packages are tricky, and the only way to know for sure is the check `${WRKDIR}/.work.log` to see if the wrappers are being invoked.
2. Don't override `PREFIX` from within the package Makefile, e.g. Java VMs, standalone shells, etc., because the code to symlink files into `${BUILDLINK_DIR}` looks for files relative to "`pkg_info -qp pkgname`".
3. Remember that *only* the `buildlink3.mk` files that you list in a package's Makefile are added as dependencies for that package.

If a dependency on a particular package is required for its libraries and headers, then we replace:

```
DEPENDS+=      foo>=1.1.0:../../category/foo
```

with

```
.include "../../category/foo/buildlink3.mk"
```

The `buildlink3.mk` files usually define the required dependencies. If you need a newer version of the dependency when using `buildlink3.mk` files, then you can define it in your Makefile; for example:

```
BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.foo+=    foo>=1.1.0
.include "../../category/foo/buildlink3.mk"
```

There are several `buildlink3.mk` files in `pkgsrc/mk` that handle special package issues:

- `bdb.buildlink3.mk` chooses either the native or a `pkgsrc` Berkeley DB implementation based on the values of `BDB_ACCEPTED` and `BDB_DEFAULT`.
- `curses.buildlink3.mk`: If the system comes with neither Curses nor NCurses, this will take care to install the `devel/ncurses` package.
- `krb5.buildlink3.mk` uses the value of `KRB5_ACCEPTED` to choose between adding a dependency on Heimdal or MIT-krb5 for packages that require a Kerberos 5 implementation.
- `motif.buildlink3.mk` checks for a system-provided Motif installation or adds a dependency on `x11/lesstif` or `x11/motif`. The user can set `MOTIF_TYPE` to “dt”, “lesstif” or “motif” to choose which Motif version will be used.
- `readline.buildlink3.mk` checks for a system-provided GNU readline or editline (libedit) installation, or adds a dependency on `devel/readline`, `devel/editline`. The user can set `READLINE_DEFAULT` to choose readline implementation. If your package really needs GNU readline library, its Makefile should include `devel/readline/buildlink3.mk` instead of `readline.buildlink3.mk`.
- `oss.buildlink3.mk` defines several variables that may be used by packages that use the Open Sound System (OSS) API.
- `pgsql.buildlink3.mk` will accept any of the Postgres versions in the variable `PGSQL_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED` and default to the version `PGSQL_VERSION_DEFAULT`. See the file for more information.
- `pthread.buildlink3.mk` uses the value of `PTHREAD_OPTS` and checks for native pthreads or adds a dependency on `devel/pth` as needed.
- `xaw.buildlink3.mk` uses the value of `XAW_TYPE` to choose a particular Athena widgets library.

The comments in those `buildlink3.mk` files provide a more complete description of how to use them properly.

18.2. Writing `buildlink3.mk` files

A package’s `buildlink3.mk` file is included by Makefiles to indicate the need to compile and link against header files and libraries provided by the package. A `buildlink3.mk` file should always provide enough information to add the correct type of dependency relationship and include any other `buildlink3.mk` files that it needs to find headers and libraries that it needs in turn.

To generate an initial `buildlink3.mk` file for further editing, Rene Hexel’s `pkgtools/createbuildlink` package is highly recommended. For most packages, the following command will generate a good starting point for `buildlink3.mk` files:

```
% cd pkgsrc/category/pkgdir
% createbuildlink >buildlink3.mk
```

18.2.1. Anatomy of a builddlink3.mk file

The following real-life example `builddlink3.mk` is taken from `pkgsrc/graphics/tiff`:

```
# $NetBSD: builddlink3.mk,v 1.16 2009/03/20 19:24:45 joerg Exp $

BUILDLINK_TREE+=      tiff

.if !defined(TIFF_BUILDLINK3_MK)
TIFF_BUILDLINK3_MK:=

BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.tiff+=      tiff>=3.6.1
BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.tiff+=      tiff>=3.7.2nb1
BUILDLINK_PKGSRCDIR.tiff?=        ../../graphics/tiff

.include "../../devel/zlib/builddlink3.mk"
.include "../../graphics/jpeg/builddlink3.mk"
.endif # TIFF_BUILDLINK3_MK

BUILDLINK_TREE+=      -tiff
```

The header and footer manipulate `BUILDLINK_TREE`, which is common across all `builddlink3.mk` files and is used to track the dependency tree.

The main section is protected from multiple inclusion and controls how the dependency on `pkg` is added. Several important variables are set in the section:

- `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` is the dependency version recorded in the installed package; this should always be set using `+=` to ensure that we’re appending to any pre-existing list of values. This variable should be set to the last version of the package that had an backwards-incompatible API change.
- `BUILDLINK_PKGSRCDIR.pkg` is the location of the `pkg` `pkgsrc` directory.
- `BUILDLINK_DEPMETHOD.pkg` (not shown above) controls whether we use `BUILD_DEPENDS` or `DEPENDS` to add the dependency on `pkg`. The build dependency is selected by setting `BUILDLINK_DEPMETHOD.pkg` to “build”. By default, the full dependency is used.
- `BUILDLINK_INCDIRS.pkg` and `BUILDLINK_LIBDIRS.pkg` (not shown above) are lists of subdirectories of `${BUILDLINK_PREFIX.pkg}` to add to the header and library search paths. These default to “include” and “lib” respectively.
- `BUILDLINK_CPPFLAGS.pkg` (not shown above) is the list of preprocessor flags to add to `CPPFLAGS`, which are passed on to the configure and build phases. The “-I” option should be avoided and instead be handled using `BUILDLINK_INCDIRS.pkg` as above.

The following variables are all optionally defined within this second section (protected against multiple inclusion) and control which package files are symlinked into `${BUILDLINK_DIR}` and how their names are transformed during the symlinking:

- `BUILDLINK_FILES.pkg` (not shown above) is a shell glob pattern relative to `${BUILDLINK_PREFIX.pkg}` to be symlinked into `${BUILDLINK_DIR}`, e.g. `include/*.h`.

- `BUILDLINK_FILES_CMD.pkg` (not shown above) is a shell pipeline that outputs to stdout a list of files relative to `${BUILDLINK_PREFIX.pkg}`. The resulting files are to be symlinked into `${BUILDLINK_DIR}`. By default, this takes the `+CONTENTS` of a `pkg` and filters it through `${BUILDLINK_CONTENTS_FILTER.pkg}`.
- `BUILDLINK_CONTENTS_FILTER.pkg` (not shown above) is a filter command that filters `+CONTENTS` input into a list of files relative to `${BUILDLINK_PREFIX.pkg}` on stdout. By default, `BUILDLINK_CONTENTS_FILTER.pkg` outputs the contents of the `include` and `lib` directories in the package `+CONTENTS`.
- `BUILDLINK_FNAME_TRANSFORM.pkg` (not shown above) is a list of sed arguments used to transform the name of the source filename into a destination filename, e.g. `-e "s/curses.h/ncurses.hlg"`.

This section can additionally include any `buildlink3.mk` needed for `pkg`'s library dependencies. Including these `buildlink3.mk` files means that the headers and libraries for these dependencies are also symlinked into `${BUILDLINK_DIR}` whenever the `pkg` `buildlink3.mk` file is included. Dependencies are only added for directly include `buildlink3.mk` files.

When providing a `buildlink3.mk` and including other `buildlink3.mk` files in it, please only add necessary ones, i.e., those whose libraries or header files are automatically exposed when the package is use.

In particular, if only an executable (`bin/foo`) is linked against a library, that library does not need to be propagated in the `buildlink3.mk` file.

The following steps should help you decide if a `buildlink3.mk` file needs to be included:

- Look at the installed header files: What headers do they include? The packages providing these files must be buildlinked.
- Run `ldd` on all installed libraries and look against what other libraries they link. Some of the packages providing these probably need to be buildlinked; however, it's not automatic, since e.g. GTK on some systems pulls in the X libraries, so they will show up in the `ldd` output, while on others (like OS X) it won't. `ldd` output can thus only be used as a hint.

18.2.2. Updating `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` and `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg` in `buildlink3.mk` files

Both variables set lower bounds for a version of this package. The two variables differ in that one describes source compatibility (API) and the other binary compatibility (ABI). The difference is that a change in the API breaks compilation of programs while changes in the ABI stop compiled programs from running.

The `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` variable in a `buildlink3.mk` should be changed very rarely. (One possible scenario: If all packages using this package need a higher version than defined in the `buildlink3.mk`, `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` could be updated to that higher version.)

On the other hand, changes to `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg` are more common. The variable will need to be updated every time the major version of one of its shared libraries is changed, or any other change where a binary built against the previous version of the package will not run against the new version any longer.

In such a case, the package's `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg` must be increased to require the new package version. Then the `PKGREVISION` of all packages `foo` that depend on this package need to be increased, and if they have `buildlink3.mk` files, `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.foo` in their `buildlink3.mk` files must be increased to the new version as well. This is required so that a package will pull in the versions of the packages that use the new ABI and that the packages' `PKGREVISIONS` uniquely identify the packages built against the new ABI. The `pkgtools/revbump` package can help with these updates.

See Section 21.1.5 for more information about dependencies on other packages, including the `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS` definitions.

Please take careful consideration before adjusting `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` or `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg` in a `buildlink3.mk` file as we don't want to cause unneeded package deletions and rebuilds. In many cases, new versions of packages work just fine with older dependencies.

Also, it is not needed to set `BUILDLINK_ABI_DEPENDS.pkg` when it is identical to `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg`.

Note there is also the distinction that users are able to disable enforcement of ABI dependencies using the `USE_ABI_DEPENDS` variable, but there is no equivalent option for API dependencies.

18.3. Writing `builtin.mk` files

Some packages in `pkgsrc` install headers and libraries that coincide with headers and libraries present in the base system. Aside from a `buildlink3.mk` file, these packages should also include a `builtin.mk` file that includes the necessary checks to decide whether using the built-in software or the `pkgsrc` software is appropriate.

The only requirements of a `builtin.mk` file for `pkg` are:

1. It should set `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` to either “yes” or “no” after it is included.
2. It should *not* override any `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` which is already set before the `builtin.mk` file is included.
3. It should be written to allow multiple inclusion. This is *very* important and takes careful attention to Makefile coding.

18.3.1. Anatomy of a `builtin.mk` file

The following is the recommended template for `builtin.mk` files:

```
.if !defined(IS_BUILTIN.foo)
#
# IS_BUILTIN.foo is set to "yes" or "no" depending on whether "foo"
# genuinely exists in the system or not.
#
IS_BUILTIN.foo?=          no

# BUILTIN_PKG.foo should be set here if "foo" is built-in and its package
# version can be determined.
```

```

#
. if !empty (IS_BUILTIN.foo:M[yY][eE][sS])
BUILTIN_PKG.foo?=      foo-1.0
. endif
.endif # IS_BUILTIN.foo

.if !defined(USE_BUILTIN.foo)
USE_BUILTIN.foo?=      ${IS_BUILTIN.foo}
. if defined(BUILTIN_PKG.foo)
.   for _depend_ in ${BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.foo}
.     if !empty(USE_BUILTIN.foo:M[yY][eE][sS])
USE_BUILTIN.foo!=      \
        ${PKG_ADMIN} pmatch '${_depend_}' ${BUILTIN_PKG.foo} \
        && ${ECHO} "yes" || ${ECHO} "no"
.     endif
.   endfor
. endif
.endif # USE_BUILTIN.foo

CHECK_BUILTIN.foo?=      no
.if !empty (CHECK_BUILTIN.foo:M[nN][oO])
#
# Here we place code that depends on whether USE_BUILTIN.foo is set to
# "yes" or "no".
#
.endif # CHECK_BUILTIN.foo

```

The first section sets `IS_BUILTIN.pkg` depending on if `pkg` really exists in the base system. This should not be a base system software with similar functionality to `pkg`; it should only be “yes” if the actual package is included as part of the base system. This variable is only used internally within the `builtin.mk` file.

The second section sets `BUILTIN_PKG.pkg` to the version of `pkg` in the base system if it exists (if `IS_BUILTIN.pkg` is “yes”). This variable is only used internally within the `builtin.mk` file.

The third section sets `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` and is *required* in all `builtin.mk` files. The code in this section must make the determination whether the built-in software is adequate to satisfy the dependencies listed in `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg`. This is typically done by comparing `BUILTIN_PKG.pkg` against each of the dependencies in `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg`. `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` *must* be set to the correct value by the end of the `builtin.mk` file. Note that `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` may be “yes” even if `IS_BUILTIN.pkg` is “no” because we may make the determination that the built-in version of the software is similar enough to be used as a replacement.

The last section is guarded by `CHECK_BUILTIN.pkg`, and includes code that uses the value of `USE_BUILTIN.pkg` set in the previous section. This typically includes, e.g., adding additional dependency restrictions and listing additional files to symlink into `${BUILDLINK_DIR}` (via `BUILDLINK_FILES.pkg`).

18.3.2. Global preferences for native or pkgsrc software

When building packages, it’s possible to choose whether to set a global preference for using either the built-in (native) version or the pkgsrc version of software to satisfy a dependency. This is controlled by

setting `PREFER_PKGSRC` and `PREFER_NATIVE`. These variables take values of either “yes”, “no”, or a list of packages. `PREFER_PKGSRC` tells `pkgsrc` to use the `pkgsrc` versions of software, while `PREFER_NATIVE` tells `pkgsrc` to use the built-in versions. Preferences are determined by the most specific instance of the package in either `PREFER_PKGSRC` or `PREFER_NATIVE`. If a package is specified in neither or in both variables, then `PREFER_PKGSRC` has precedence over `PREFER_NATIVE`. For example, to require using `pkgsrc` versions of software for all but the most basic bits on a NetBSD system, you can set:

```
PREFER_PKGSRC=  yes
PREFER_NATIVE=  getopt skey tcp_wrappers
```

A package *must* have a `builtin.mk` file to be listed in `PREFER_NATIVE`, otherwise it is simply ignored in that list.

`PREFER_PKGSRC` and `PREFER_NATIVE` should be set during bootstrap to ensure that the bootstrap process does not use inappropriate native tools as dependencies for core packages.

```
# ./bootstrap --prefer-pkgsrc yes --prefer-native openssl
```

Switching between settings globally at a later date can introduce complications with dependency resolution. This is caused by packages built with the opposite preference being installed alongside each other. Hence, any changes to these variables after bootstrap will necessitate rebuilding all packages depending on one whose preference has been changed. This is not trivial and should be avoided.

When using `pkgsrc` on Linux systems, there is high risk of “leakage”, where programs installed by `pkgsrc` may inadvertently use a command or library not installed by `pkgsrc`, e.g. those installed by `yum` or `apt`. Such foreign dependencies may be installed, removed, or upgraded to a version incompatible with the `pkgsrc` package at any time, causing `pkgsrc` packages to subsequently malfunction. `Pkgsrc` cannot prevent this, as it has no control over other package managers. Another potential problem is that under Redhat Enterprise and related Linux systems, `yum` packages are only patched and never upgraded, so eventually they may become too outdated for use by `pkgsrc`. Even intentionally using foreign dependencies, not considered leakage, can lead to these problems, so it is generally discouraged. In order to minimize such problems, `PREFER_PKGSRC` defaults to “yes” on Linux systems. This ensures that `pkgsrc` is aware of any changes to dependency packages and can rebuild or upgrade the entire dependency tree as needed. This default can be overridden by setting `--prefer-pkgsrc` to “no” or a list of packages, or by setting `--prefer-native` to “yes”.

Chapter 19.

PLIST issues

The `PLIST` file contains a package's "packing list", i.e. a list of files that belong to the package (relative to the `${PREFIX}` directory it's been installed in) plus some additional statements - see the `pkg_create(1)` man page for a full list. This chapter addresses some issues that need attention when dealing with the `PLIST` file (or files, see below!).

19.1. RCS ID

Be sure to add a RCS ID line as the first thing in any `PLIST` file you write:

```
@comment $NetBSD $
```

An artificial space has been added between `NetBSD` and `$`, this is a workaround here to prevent CVS expanding to the filename of the guide. When adding the RCS ID the space should be omitted.

19.2. Semi-automatic `PLIST` generation

You can use the **make print-PLIST** command to output a `PLIST` that matches any new files since the package was extracted. See Section 13.17 for more information on this target.

19.3. Tweaking output of `make print-PLIST`

The `PRINT_PLIST_AWK` variable takes a set of AWK patterns and actions that are used to filter the output of `print-PLIST`. You can *append* any chunk of AWK scripting you like to it, but be careful with quoting.

For example, to get all files inside the `libdata/foo` directory removed from the resulting `PLIST`:

```
PRINT_PLIST_AWK+=      /^libdata\/foo/ { next; }
```

The `PRINT_PLIST_AWK` transformations are evaluated after the file list and directory list are sorted. `EARLY_PRINT_PLIST_AWK` is like `PRINT_PLIST_AWK` except it operates before the file list and directory list are sorted.

19.4. Variable substitution in `PLIST`

A number of variables are substituted automatically in `PLIST`s when a package is installed on a system. This includes the following variables:

```
${MACHINE_ARCH}, ${MACHINE_GNU_ARCH}
```

Some packages like emacs and perl embed information about which architecture they were built on into the pathnames where they install their files. To handle this case, PLIST will be preprocessed before actually used, and the symbol “`${MACHINE_ARCH}`” will be replaced by what **uname -p** gives. The same is done if the string `${MACHINE_GNU_ARCH}` is embedded in PLIST somewhere - use this on packages that have GNU autoconf-created configure scripts.

Legacy note: There used to be a symbol “`$ARCH`” that was replaced by the output of **uname -m**, but that’s no longer supported and has been removed.

```
${OPSYS}, ${LOWER_OPSYS}, ${OS_VERSION}
```

Some packages want to embed the OS name and version into some paths. To do this, use these variables in the PLIST:

- `${OPSYS}` - output of “**uname -s**”
- `${LOWER_OPSYS}` - lowercase common name (eg. “solaris”)
- `${OS_VERSION}` - “**uname -r**”

For a list of values which are replaced by default, the output of **make help topic=PLIST_SUBST** as well as searching the `pkgsrc/mk` directory with **grep** for `PLIST_SUBST` should help.

If you want to change other variables not listed above, you can add variables and their expansions to this variable in the following way, similar to `MESSAGE_SUBST` (see Section 12.5):

```
PLIST_SUBST+=    SOMEVAR="somevalue"
```

This replaces all occurrences of “`${SOMEVAR}`” in the PLIST with “somevalue”.

The `PLIST_VARS` variable can be used to simplify the common case of conditionally including some PLIST entries. It can be done by adding `PLIST_VARS+=foo` and setting the corresponding `PLIST.foo` variable to `yes` if the entry should be included. This will substitute “`${PLIST.foo}`” in the PLIST with either “`" "`” or “`"@comment "`”. For example, in Makefile:

```
PLIST_VARS+=    foo
.if condition
PLIST.foo=      yes
.else
```

And then in PLIST:

```
@comment $NetBSD $
bin/bar
man/man1/bar.1
${PLIST.foo}bin/foo
${PLIST.foo}man/man1/foo.1
${PLIST.foo}share/bar/foo.data
```

An artificial space has been added between NetBSD and \$, this is a workaround here to prevent CVS expanding to the filename of the guide. When adding the RCS ID the space should be omitted.

19.5. Man page compression

Man pages should be installed in compressed form if `MANZ` is set (in `bsd.own.mk`), and uncompressed otherwise. To handle this in the `PLIST` file, the suffix “.gz” is appended/removed automatically for man pages according to `MANZ` and `MANCOMPRESSED` being set or not, see above for details. This modification of the `PLIST` file is done on a copy of it, not `PLIST` itself.

19.6. Changing PLIST source with `PLIST_SRC`

To use one or more files as source for the `PLIST` used in generating the binary package, set the variable `PLIST_SRC` to the names of that file(s). The files are later concatenated using `cat(1)`, and the order of things is important. The default for `PLIST_SRC` is `${PKGDIR}/PLIST`.

19.7. Platform-specific and differing PLISTS

Some packages decide to install a different set of files based on the operating system being used. These differences can be automatically handled by using the following files:

- `PLIST.common`
- `PLIST.${OPSYS}`
- `PLIST.${MACHINE_ARCH}`
- `PLIST.${OPSYS}-${MACHINE_ARCH}`
- `PLIST.common_end`

19.8. Build-specific PLISTS

Some packages decide to generate hard-to-guess file names during installation that are hard to wire down.

In such cases, you can set the `GENERATE_PLIST` variable to shell code terminated (with a semicolon) that will output `PLIST` entries which will be appended to the `PLIST`

You can find one example in `editors/xemacs`:

```
GENERATE_PLIST+=          ${ECHO} bin/${DISTNAME}-${WRKSRC}/src/xemacs -sd`.dmp ;
```

which will append something like `bin/xemacs-21.4.23-54e8ea71.dmp` to the `PLIST`.

19.9. Sharing directories between packages

A “shared directory” is a directory where multiple (and unrelated) packages install files. These directories were problematic because you had to add special tricks in the PLIST to conditionally remove them, or have some centralized package handle them.

In pkgsrc, it is now easy: Each package should create directories and install files as needed; **pkg_delete** will remove any directories left empty after uninstalling a package.

If a package needs an empty directory to work, create the directory during installation as usual, and also add an entry to the PLIST:

```
@pkgdir path/to/empty/directory
```

or take a look at `MAKE_DIRS` and `OWN_DIRS`.

Chapter 20.

The pkginstall framework

This chapter describes the framework known as `pkginstall`, whose key features are:

- Generic installation and manipulation of directories and files outside the `pkgsrc`-handled tree, `LOCALBASE`.
- Automatic handling of configuration files during installation, provided that packages are correctly designed.
- Generation and installation of system startup scripts.
- Registration of system users and groups.
- Registration of system shells.
- Automatic updating of fonts databases.

The following sections inspect each of the above points in detail.

You may be thinking that many of the things described here could be easily done with simple code in the package's post-installation target (`post-install`). *This is incorrect*, as the code in them is only executed when building from source. Machines using binary packages could not benefit from it at all (as the code itself could be unavailable). Therefore, the only way to achieve any of the items described above is by means of the installation scripts, which are automatically generated by `pkginstall`.

20.1. Files and directories outside the installation prefix

As you already know, the `PLIST` file holds a list of files and directories that belong to a package. The names used in it are relative to the installation prefix (`${PREFIX}`), which means that it cannot register files outside this directory (absolute path names are not allowed). Despite this restriction, some packages need to install files outside this location; e.g., under `${VARBASE}` or `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}`. The only way to achieve this is to create such files during installation time by using installation scripts.

The generic installation scripts are shell scripts that can contain arbitrary code. The list of scripts to execute is taken from the `INSTALL_FILE` variable, which defaults to `INSTALL`. A similar variable exists for package removal (`DEINSTALL_FILE`, whose default is `DEINSTALL`). These scripts can run arbitrary commands, so they have the potential to create and manage files anywhere in the file system.

Using these general installation files is not recommended, but may be needed in some special cases. One reason for avoiding them is that the user has to trust the packager that there is no unwanted or simply erroneous code included in the installation script. Also, previously there were many similar scripts for the same functionality, and fixing a common error involved finding and changing all of them.

The `pkginstall` framework offers another, standardized way. It provides generic scripts to abstract the manipulation of such files and directories based on variables set in the package's `Makefile`. The rest of this section describes these variables.

20.1.1. Directory manipulation

The following variables can be set to request the creation of directories anywhere in the file system:

- `MAKE_DIRS` and `OWN_DIRS` contain a list of directories that should be created and should attempt to be destroyed by the installation scripts. The difference between the two is that the latter prompts the administrator to remove any directories that may be left after deinstallation (because they were not empty), while the former does not. Example:

```
MAKE_DIRS+=                ${VARBASE}/foo/private
```

- `MAKE_DIRS_PERMS` and `OWN_DIRS_PERMS` contain a list of tuples describing which directories should be created and should attempt to be destroyed by the installation scripts. Each tuple holds the following values, separated by spaces: the directory name, its owner, its group and its numerical mode. For example:

```
MAKE_DIRS_PERMS+=          ${VARBASE}/foo/private \
                             ${REAL_ROOT_USER} ${REAL_ROOT_GROUP} 0700
```

The difference between the two is exactly the same as their non-PERMS counterparts.

20.1.2. File manipulation

Creating non-empty files outside the installation prefix is tricky because the `PLIST` forces all files to be inside it. To overcome this problem, the only solution is to extract the file in the known place (i.e., inside the installation prefix) and copy it to the appropriate location during installation (done by the installation scripts generated by *pkginstall*). We will call the former the *master file* in the following paragraphs, which describe the variables that can be used to automatically and consistently handle files outside the installation prefix:

- `CONF_FILES` and `REQD_FILES` are pairs of master and target files. During installation time, the master file is copied to the target one if and only if the latter does not exist. Upon deinstallation, the target file is removed provided that it was not modified by the installation.

The difference between the two is that the latter prompts the administrator to remove any files that may be left after deinstallation (because they were not empty), while the former does not.

- `CONF_FILES_PERMS` and `REQD_FILES_PERMS` contain tuples describing master files as well as their target locations. For each of them, it also specifies their owner, their group and their numeric permissions, in this order. For example:

```
REQD_FILES_PERMS+=          ${PREFIX}/share/somefile ${VARBASE}/somefile \
                             ${REAL_ROOT_USER} ${REAL_ROOT_GROUP} 0700
```

The difference between the two is exactly the same as their non-PERMS counterparts.

20.2. Configuration files

Configuration files are special in the sense that they are installed in their own specific directory, `PKG_SYSCONFDIR`, and need special treatment during installation (most of which is automated by *pkginstall*). The main concept you must bear in mind is that files marked as configuration files are

automatically copied to the right place (somewhere inside `PKG_SYSCONFDIR`) during installation *if and only if* they didn't exist before. Similarly, they will not be removed if they have local modifications. This ensures that administrators never lose any custom changes they may have made.

20.2.1. How `PKG_SYSCONFDIR` is set

As said before, the `PKG_SYSCONFDIR` variable specifies where configuration files shall be installed. Its contents are set based upon the following variables:

- `PKG_SYSCONFBASE`: The configuration's root directory. Defaults to `${PREFIX}/etc` although it may be overridden by the user to point to his preferred location (e.g., `/etc`, `/etc/pkg`, etc.). Packages must not use it directly.
- `PKG_SYSCONFSUBDIR`: A subdirectory of `PKG_SYSCONFBASE` under which the configuration files for the package being built shall be installed. The definition of this variable only makes sense in the package's `Makefile` (i.e., it is not user-customizable).

As an example, consider the Apache package, `www/apache24`, which places its configuration files under the `httpd/` subdirectory of `PKG_SYSCONFBASE`. This should be set in the package `Makefile`.

- `PKG_SYSCONFVAR`: Specifies the name of the variable that holds this package's configuration directory (if different from `PKG_SYSCONFBASE`). It defaults to `PKGBASE`'s value, and is always prefixed with `PKG_SYSCONFDIR`.
- `PKG_SYSCONFDIR.${PKG_SYSCONFVAR}`: Holds the directory where the configuration files for the package identified by `PKG_SYSCONFVAR`'s shall be placed.

Based on the above variables, `pkginstall` determines the value of `PKG_SYSCONFDIR`, which is the *only* variable that can be used within a package to refer to its configuration directory. The algorithm used to set its value is basically the following:

1. If `PKG_SYSCONFDIR.${PKG_SYSCONFVAR}` is set, its value is used.
2. If the previous variable is not defined but `PKG_SYSCONFSUBDIR` is set in the package's `Makefile`, the resulting value is `${PKG_SYSCONFBASE}/${PKG_SYSCONFSUBDIR}`.
3. Otherwise, it is set to `${PKG_SYSCONFBASE}`.

It is worth mentioning that `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}` is automatically added to `OWN_DIRS`. See Section 20.1.1 what this means. This does not apply to subdirectories of `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}`, they still have to be created with `OWN_DIRS` or `MAKE_DIRS`.

20.2.2. Telling the software where configuration files are

Given that `pkgsrc` (and users!) expect configuration files to be in a known place, you need to teach each package where it shall install its files. In some cases you will have to patch the package `Makefiles` to achieve it. If you are lucky, though, it may be as easy as passing an extra flag to the configuration script; this is the case of GNU Autoconf-generated files:

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS+= --sysconfdir=${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}
```

Note that this specifies where the package has to *look for* its configuration files, not where they will be originally installed (although the difference is never explicit, unfortunately).

20.2.3. Patching installations

As said before, *pkginstall* automatically handles configuration files. This means that **the packages themselves must not touch the contents of `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}` directly**. Bad news is that many software installation scripts will, out of the box, mess with the contents of that directory. So what is the correct procedure to fix this issue?

You must teach the package (usually by manually patching it) to install any configuration files under the examples hierarchy, `share/examples/${PKGBASE}/`. This way, the `PLIST` registers them and the administrator always has the original copies available.

Once the required configuration files are in place (i.e., under the examples hierarchy), the *pkginstall* framework can use them as master copies during the package installation to update what is in `${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}`. To achieve this, the variables `CONF_FILES` and `CONF_FILES_PERMS` are used. Check out Section 20.1.2 for information about their syntax and their purpose. Here is an example, taken from the `mail/mutt` package:

```
EGDIR=      ${PREFIX}/share/doc/mutt/samples
CONF_FILES= ${EGDIR}/Muttrc ${PKG_SYSCONFDIR}/Muttrc
```

Note that the `EGDIR` variable is specific to that package and has no meaning outside it.

20.2.4. Disabling handling of configuration files

The automatic copying of config files can be toggled by setting the environment variable `PKG_CONFIG` prior to package installation.

20.3. System startup scripts

System startup scripts are special files because they must be installed in a place known by the underlying OS, usually outside the installation prefix. Therefore, the same rules described in Section 20.1 apply, and the same solutions can be used. However, *pkginstall* provides a special mechanism to handle these files.

In order to provide system startup scripts, the package has to:

1. Store the script inside `${FILESDIR}`, with the `.sh` suffix appended. Considering the `print/cups` package as an example, it has a `cupsd.sh` in its files directory.
2. Tell *pkginstall* to handle it, appending the name of the script, without its extension, to the `RCD_SCRIPTS` variable. Continuing the previous example:

```
RCD_SCRIPTS+= cupsd
```

Once this is done, *pkginstall* will do the following steps for each script in an automated fashion:

1. Process the file found in the files directory applying all the substitutions described in the `FILES_SUBST` variable.
2. Copy the script from the files directory to the examples hierarchy, `${PREFIX}/share/examples/rc.d/`. Note that this master file must be explicitly registered in the `PLIST`.
3. Add code to the installation scripts to copy the startup script from the examples hierarchy into the system-wide startup scripts directory.

20.3.1. Disabling handling of system startup scripts

The automatic copying of config files can be toggled by setting the environment variable `PKG_RCD_SCRIPTS` prior to package installation. Note that the scripts will be always copied inside the examples hierarchy, `${PREFIX}/share/examples/rc.d/`, no matter what the value of this variable is.

20.4. System users and groups

If a package needs to create special users and/or groups during installation, it can do so by using the *pkginstall* framework.

Users can be created by adding entries to the `PKG_USERS` variable. Each entry has the following syntax:

```
user:group
```

Further specification of user details may be done by setting per-user variables. `PKG_UID.user` is the numeric UID for the user. `PKG_GECOS.user` is the user's description or comment. `PKG_HOME.user` is the user's home directory, and defaults to `/nonexistent` if not specified. `PKG_SHELL.user` is the user's shell, and defaults to `/sbin/nologin` if not specified.

Similarly, groups can be created by adding entries to the `PKG_GROUPS` variable, whose syntax is:

```
group
```

The numeric GID of the group may be set by defining `PKG_GID.group`.

If a package needs to create the users and groups at an earlier stage, then it can set `USERGROUP_PHASE` to either `configure`, `build`, or `pre-install` to indicate the phase before which the users and groups are created. In this case, the numeric UIDs and GIDs of the created users and groups are automatically hardcoded into the final installation scripts.

20.5. System shells

Packages that install system shells should register them in the shell database, `/etc/shells`, to make things easier to the administrator. This must be done from the installation scripts to keep binary packages working on any system. *pkginstall* provides an easy way to accomplish this task.

When a package provides a shell interpreter, it has to set the `PKG_SHELL` variable to its absolute file name. This will add some hooks to the installation scripts to handle it. Consider the following example, taken from `shells/zsh`:

```
PKG_SHELL=      ${PREFIX}/bin/zsh
```

20.5.1. Disabling shell registration

The automatic registration of shell interpreters can be disabled by the administrator by setting the `PKG_REGISTER_SHELLS` environment variable to `NO`.

20.6. Fonts

Packages that install X11 fonts should update the database files that index the fonts within each fonts directory. This can easily be accomplished within the *pkginstall* framework.

When a package installs X11 fonts, it must list the directories in which fonts are installed in the `FONTSDIRS.type` variables, where *type* can be one of “ttf”, “type1” or “x11”. This will add hooks to the installation scripts to run the appropriate commands to update the fonts database files within each of those directories. For convenience, if the directory path is relative, it is taken to be relative to the package’s installation prefix. Consider the following example, taken from `fonts/dbz-ttf`:

```
FONTSDIRS.ttf= ${PREFIX}/share/fonts/X11/TTF
```

20.6.1. Disabling automatic update of the fonts databases

The automatic update of fonts databases can be disabled by the administrator by setting the `PKG_UPDATE_FONTS_DB` environment variable to `NO`.

Chapter 21.

Making your package work

21.1. General operation

One appealing feature of pkgsrc is that it runs on many different platforms. As a result, it is important to ensure, where possible, that packages in pkgsrc are portable. This chapter mentions some particular details you should pay attention to while working on pkgsrc.

21.1.1. How to pull in user-settable variables from `mk.conf`

The pkgsrc user can configure pkgsrc by overriding several variables in the file pointed to by `MAKECONF`, which is `mk.conf` by default. When you want to use those variables in the preprocessor directives of `make(1)` (for example `.if` or `.for`), you need to include the file `../.. /mk/bsd.prefs.mk` before, which in turn loads the user preferences.

But note that some variables may not be completely defined after `../.. /mk/bsd.prefs.mk` has been included, as they may contain references to variables that are not yet defined. In shell commands (the lines in `Makefile` that are indented with a tab) this is no problem, since variables are only expanded when they are used. But in the preprocessor directives mentioned above and in dependency lines (of the form `target: dependencies`) the variables are expanded at load time.

Note: To check whether a variable can be used at load time, run **pkglint -Wall** on your package.

21.1.2. User interaction

Occasionally, packages require interaction from the user, and this can be in a number of ways:

- When fetching the distfiles, some packages require user interaction such as entering username/password or accepting a license on a web page.
- When extracting the distfiles, some packages may ask for passwords.
- help to configure the package before it is built
- help during the build process
- help during the installation of a package

A package can set the `INTERACTIVE_STAGE` variable to define which stages need interaction. This should be done in the package's `Makefile`, e.g.:

```
INTERACTIVE_STAGE=      configure install
```

The user can then decide to skip this package by setting the `BATCH` variable. Packages that require interaction are also excluded from bulk builds.

21.1.3. Handling licenses

Authors of software can choose the licence under which software can be copied. The Free Software Foundation has declared some licenses "Free", and the Open Source Initiative has a definition of "Open Source".

By default, `pkgsrc` allows packages with Free or Open Source licenses to be built. To allow packages with other licenses to be built as well, the `pkgsrc` user needs to add these licenses to the `ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` variable in `mk.conf`. Note that this variable only affects which packages may be *built*, while the license terms often also restrict the actual use of the package and its redistribution.

One might want to only install packages with a BSD license, or the GPL, and not the other. The free licenses are added to the default `ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` variable. The `pkgsrc` user can override the default by setting the `ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` variable with "=" instead of "+=". The licenses accepted by default are defined in the `DEFAULT_ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` variable in the file `pkgsrc/mk/license.mk`.

The license tag mechanism is intended to address copyright-related issues surrounding building, installing and using a package, and not to address redistribution issues (see `RESTRICTED` and `NO_SRC_ON_FTP`, etc.). Packages with redistribution restrictions should set these tags.

Denoting that a package may be copied according to a particular license is done by placing the license in `pkgsrc/licenses` and setting the `LICENSE` variable to a string identifying the license, e.g. in `graphics/xv`:

```
LICENSE=          xv-license
```

When trying to build, the user will get a notice that the package is covered by a license which has not been placed in the `ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` variable:

```
% make
===> xv-3.10anb9 has an unacceptable license: xv-license.
===>      To view the license, enter "/usr/bin/make show-license".
===>      To indicate acceptance, add this line to your /etc/mk.conf:
===>      ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES+=xv-license
*** Error code 1
```

The license can be viewed with **make show-license**, and if the user so chooses, the line printed above can be added to `mk.conf` to convey to `pkgsrc` that it should not in the future fail because of that license:

```
ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES+=xv-license
```

The use of `LICENSE=shareware`, `LICENSE=no-commercial-use`, and similar language is deprecated because it does not crisply refer to a particular license text. Another problem with such usage is that it does not enable a user to tell `pkgsrc` to proceed for a single package without also telling `pkgsrc` to proceed for all packages with that tag.

21.1.3.1. Adding a package with a new license

When adding a package with a new license, the following steps are required:

1. Check whether the license qualifies as Free or Open Source by referencing Various Licenses and Comments about Them (<https://www.gnu.org/licenses/license-list.en.html>) and Licenses by Name | Open Source Initiative (<https://opensource.org/licenses/alphabetical>). If this is the case, the filename in `pkgsrc/licenses/` does not need the `-license` suffix, and the license name should be added to:
 - `DEFAULT_ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES` in `pkgsrc/mk/license.mk`
 - `default_acceptable_licenses` in `pkgsrc/pkgtools/pkg_install/files/lib/license.c`
2. The license text should be added to `pkgsrc/licenses` for displaying. A list of known licenses can be seen in this directory.

21.1.3.2. Change to the license

When the license changes (in a way other than formatting), make sure that the new license has a different name (e.g., append the version number if it exists, or the date). Just because a user told `pkgsrc` to build programs under a previous version of a license does not mean that `pkgsrc` should build programs under the new licenses. The higher-level point is that `pkgsrc` does not evaluate licenses for reasonableness; the only test is a mechanistic test of whether a particular text has been approved by either of two bodies (FSF or OSI).

21.1.4. Restricted packages

Some licenses restrict how software may be re-distributed. By declaring the restrictions, package tools can automatically refrain from e.g. placing binary packages on FTP sites.

There are four possible restrictions, which are the cross product of sources (distfiles) and binaries not being placed on FTP sites and CD-ROMs. Because this is rarely the exact language in any license, and because non-Free licenses tend to be different from each other, `pkgsrc` adopts a definition of FTP and CD-ROM. "FTP" means making the source or binary file available over the Internet at no charge. "CD-ROM" means making the source or binary available on some kind of media, together with other source and binary packages, which is sold for a distribution charge.

In order to encode these restrictions, the package system defines five make variables that can be set to note these restrictions:

- `RESTRICTED`

This variable should be set whenever a restriction exists (regardless of its kind). Set this variable to a string containing the reason for the restriction. It should be understood that those wanting to understand the restriction will have to read the license, and perhaps seek advice of counsel.

- `NO_BIN_ON_CDROM`

Binaries may not be placed on CD-ROM containing other binary packages, for which a distribution charge may be made. In this case, set this variable to `${RESTRICTED}`.

- `NO_BIN_ON_FTP`

Binaries may not be made available on the Internet without charge. In this case, set this variable to `${RESTRICTED}`. If this variable is set, binary packages will not be included on `ftp.NetBSD.org`.

- `NO_SRC_ON_CDROM`

Distfiles may not be placed on CD-ROM, together with other distfiles, for which a fee may be charged. In this case, set this variable to `${RESTRICTED}`.

- `NO_SRC_ON_FTP`

Distfiles may not be made available via FTP at no charge. In this case, set this variable to `${RESTRICTED}`. If this variable is set, the distfile(s) will not be mirrored on `ftp.NetBSD.org`.

Please note that packages will be removed from `pkgsrc` when the distfiles are not distributable and cannot be obtained for a period of one full quarter branch. Packages with manual/interactive fetch must have a maintainer and it is his/her responsibility to ensure this.

21.1.5. Handling dependencies

Your package may depend on some other package being present, and there are various ways of expressing this dependency. `pkgsrc` supports the `DEPENDS`, `BUILD_DEPENDS`, `TOOL_DEPENDS`, and `TEST_DEPENDS` definitions, the `USE_TOOLS` definition, as well as dependencies via `buildlink3.mk`, which is the preferred way to handle dependencies, and which uses the variables named above. See Chapter 18 for more information.

The basic difference is that the `DEPENDS` definition registers that pre-requisite in the binary package so it will be pulled in when the binary package is later installed, whilst the `BUILD_DEPENDS`, `TOOL_DEPENDS`, and `TEST_DEPENDS` definitions do not, marking a dependency that is only needed for building or testing the resulting package. See also Chapter 14 for more information.

This means that if you only need a package present whilst you are building or testing, it should be noted as a `TOOL_DEPENDS`, `BUILD_DEPENDS`, or `TEST_DEPENDS`. When cross-compiling, `TOOL_DEPENDS` are *native* packages, i.e. packages for the architecture where the package is built; `BUILD_DEPENDS` are *target* packages, i.e., packages for the architecture for which the package is built.

The format for a `DEPENDS`, `BUILD_DEPENDS`, `TOOL_DEPENDS`, and `TEST_DEPENDS` definition is:

```
<pre-req-package-name>:../../<category>/<pre-req-package>
```

Please note that the “pre-req-package-name” may include any of the wildcard version numbers recognized by `pkg_info(1)`.

1. If your package needs another package’s binaries or libraries to build and run, and if that package has a `buildlink3.mk` file available, use it:

```
.include "../../graphics/jpeg/buildlink3.mk"
```

2. If your package needs another package’s binaries or libraries only for building, and if that package has a `buildlink3.mk` file available, use it:

```
.include "../../graphics/jpeg/buildlink3.mk"
```

but set `BUILDLINK_DEPMETHOD.jpeg?=build` to make it a build dependency only. This case is rather rare.

3. If your package needs binaries from another package to build, use the `TOOL_DEPENDS` definition:

```
TOOL_DEPENDS+= itstool-[0-9]*:../../textproc/itstool
```

4. If your package needs static libraries to link against, header files to include, etc. from another package to build, use the `BUILD_DEPENDS` definition.
5. If your package needs a library with which to link and there is no `buildlink3.mk` file available, create one. Using `DEPENDS` won't be sufficient because the include files and libraries will be hidden from the compiler.
6. If your package needs some executable to be able to run correctly and if there's no `buildlink3.mk` file, this is specified using the `DEPENDS` variable. The `print/lyx` package needs to be able to execute the latex binary from the `tex-latex-bin` package when it runs, and that is specified:

```
DEPENDS+= tex-latex-bin-[0-9]*:../../print/tex-latex-bin
```

7. If your package includes a test suite that has extra dependencies only required for this purpose (frequently this can be run as a "make test" target), use the `TEST_DEPENDS` variable.
8. You can use wildcards in package dependencies. Note that such wildcard dependencies are retained when creating binary packages. The dependency is checked when installing the binary package and any package which matches the pattern will be used. Wildcard dependencies should be used with care.

The `"-[0-9]*"` should be used instead of `"-"` to avoid potentially ambiguous matches such as `"tk-postgresql"` matching a `"tk-"` `DEPENDS`.

Wildcards can also be used to specify that a package will only build against a certain minimum version of a pre-requisite:

```
DEPENDS+= ImageMagick>=6.0:../../graphics/ImageMagick
```

This means that the package will build using version 6.0 of ImageMagick or newer. Such a dependency may be warranted if, for example, the command line options of an executable have changed.

If you need to depend on minimum versions of libraries, set `BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.pkg` to the appropriate pattern before including its `buildlink3.mk` file, e.g.

```
BUILDLINK_API_DEPENDS.jpeg+= jpeg>=9.0
.include "../../graphics/jpeg/buildlink3.mk"
```

For security fixes, please update the package vulnerabilities file. See Section 21.1.9 for more information.

If your package needs files from another package to build, add the relevant distribution files to `DISTFILES`, so they will be extracted automatically. See the `print/ghostscript` package for an example. (It relies on the jpeg sources being present in source form during the build.)

21.1.6. Handling conflicts with other packages

Your package may conflict with other packages a user might already have installed on his system, e.g. if your package installs the same set of files as another package in the `pkgsrc` tree or has the same `PKGNAME`.

For example, `x11/libXaw3d` and `x11/Xaw-Xpm` install the same shared library, thus you set in `pkgsrc/x11/libXaw3d/Makefile`:

```
CONFLICTS=      Xaw-Xpm-[0-9]*
```

and in `pkgsrc/x11/Xaw-Xpm/Makefile`:

```
CONFLICTS=      libXaw3d-[0-9]*
```

`pkg_add(1)` is able to detect attempts to install packages that conflict with existing packages and abort. However, in many situations this is too late in the process. Binary package managers will not know about the conflict until they attempt to install the package after already downloading it and all its dependencies. Users may also waste time building a package and its dependencies only to find out at the end that it conflicts with another package they have installed.

To avoid these issues `CONFLICTS` entries should be added in all cases where it is known that packages conflict with each other. These `CONFLICTS` entries are exported in `pkg_summary(5)` files and consumed by binary package managers to inform users that packages cannot be installed onto the target system.

21.1.7. Packages that cannot or should not be built

There are several reasons why a package might be instructed to not build under certain circumstances. If the package builds and runs on most platforms, the exceptions should be noted with `BROKEN_ON_PLATFORM`. If the package builds and runs on a small handful of platforms, set `BROKEN_EXCEPT_ON_PLATFORM` instead. Both `BROKEN_ON_PLATFORM` and `BROKEN_EXCEPT_ON_PLATFORM` are OS triples (OS-version-platform) that can use glob-style wildcards.

If a package is not appropriate for some platforms (as opposed to merely broken), a different set of variables should be used as this affects failure reporting and statistics. If the package is appropriate for most platforms, the exceptions should be noted with `NOT_FOR_PLATFORM`. If the package is appropriate for only a small handful of platforms (often exactly one), set `ONLY_FOR_PLATFORM` instead. Both `ONLY_FOR_PLATFORM` and `NOT_FOR_PLATFORM` are OS triples (OS-version-platform) that can use glob-style wildcards.

Some packages are tightly bound to a specific version of an operating system, e.g. LKMs or `sysutils/lsof`. Such binary packages are not backwards compatible with other versions of the OS, and should be uploaded to a version specific directory on the FTP server. Mark these packages by setting `OSVERSION_SPECIFIC` to “yes”. This variable is not currently used by any of the package system internals, but may be used in the future.

If the package should be skipped (for example, because it provides functionality already provided by the system), set `PKG_SKIP_REASON` to a descriptive message. If the package should fail because some preconditions are not met, set `PKG_FAIL_REASON` to a descriptive message.

21.1.8. Packages which should not be deleted, once installed

To ensure that a package may not be deleted, once it has been installed, the `PKG_PRESERVE` definition should be set in the package Makefile. This will be carried into any binary package that is made from this

pkgsrc entry. A “preserved” package will not be deleted using `pkg_delete(1)` unless the “-f” option is used.

21.1.9. Handling packages with security problems

When a vulnerability is found, this should be noted in

`localsrc/security/advisories/pkg-vulnerabilities`. Entries in that file consist of three parts:

- package version pattern
- type of vulnerability (please cut’n’paste an existing one where possible)
- URL providing additional information about the issue

For the package version pattern please always use ‘<’ to mark an upper bound (not ‘<=’!). This will avoid possible problems due unrelated `PKGREVISION` bumps not related to security fixes. Lower bounds can be added too, using ‘>’ or ‘>=’. For example, “`foo>=1<1.2`” would mark versions 1.0 (included) to 1.2 (excluded) of “`foo`” as affected by the security issue.

Entries should always be added at the bottom of the file.

When fixing packages, please modify the upper bound of the corresponding entry. To continue the previous example, if a fix was backported to version 1.1nb2, change the previous pattern to “`foo>=1<1.1nb2`”.

To locally test a package version pattern against a `PKGNAME` you can use the **`pkg_admin pmatch`** command.

The URL should be as permanent as possible and provide as much information about the issue as possible. CVE entries are preferred.

After committing that file, ask `pkgsrc-security@NetBSD.org` to update the file on `ftp.NetBSD.org`.

After fixing the vulnerability by a patch, its `PKGREVISION` should be increased (this is of course not necessary if the problem is fixed by using a newer release of the software), and the pattern in the `pkg-vulnerabilities` file must be updated.

Also, if the fix should be applied to the stable `pkgsrc` branch, be sure to submit a pullup request!

Binary packages already on `ftp.NetBSD.org` will be handled semi-automatically by a weekly cron job.

In case a security issue is disputed, please contact `pkgsrc-security@NetBSD.org`.

21.1.10. How to handle incrementing versions when fixing an existing package

When making fixes to an existing package it can be useful to change the version number in `PKGNAME`. To avoid conflicting with future versions by the original author, a “nb1”, “nb2”, ... suffix can be used on package versions by setting `PKGREVISION=1` (2, ...). The “nb” is treated like a “.” by the package tools. e.g.

```
DISTNAME=      foo-17.42
PKGREVISION=    9
```

will result in a `PKGNAME` of “foo-17.42nb9”. If you want to use the original value of `PKGNAME` without the “nbX” suffix, e.g. for setting `DIST_SUBDIR`, use `PKGNAME_NOREV`.

When a new release of the package is released, the `PKGREVISION` should be removed, e.g. on a new minor release of the above package, things should be like:

```
DISTNAME=          foo-17.43
```

`PKGREVISION` should be incremented for any non-trivial change in the resulting binary package. Without a `PKGREVISION` bump, someone with the previous version installed has no way of knowing that their package is out of date. Thus, changes without increasing `PKGREVISION` are essentially labeled “this is so trivial that no reasonable person would want to upgrade”, and this is the rough test for when increasing `PKGREVISION` is appropriate. Examples of changes that do not merit increasing `PKGREVISION` are:

- Changing `HOMEPAGE`, `MAINTAINER`, `OWNER`, or comments in `Makefile`.
- Changing build variables if the resulting binary package is the same.
- Changing `DESCR`.
- Adding `PKG_OPTIONS` if the default options don’t change.

Examples of changes that do merit an increase to `PKGREVISION` include:

- Security fixes
- Changes or additions to a patch file
- Changes to the `PLIST`
- A dependency is changed or renamed.

`PKGREVISION` must also be incremented when dependencies have ABI changes.

21.1.11. Substituting variable text in the package files (the SUBST framework)

When you want to replace the same text in multiple files, or multiple times in the same file, it is cumbersome to maintain a patch file for this. This is where the SUBST framework steps in. It provides an easy-to-use interface for replacing text in files. It just needs the following information:

- In which phase of the package build cycle should the replacement happen?
- In which files should the replacement happen?
- Which text should be replaced with what?

This information is encoded in a block of `SUBST` variables. A minimal example is:

```
SUBST_CLASSES+=      paths
SUBST_STAGE.paths=   pre-configure
SUBST_FILES.paths=    src/*.c
SUBST_SED.paths=      -e 's,/usr/local,${PREFIX},g'
```

Translated into English, it means: In the pre-configure stage (that is, after applying the patches from the `patches/` directory and before running the configure script and the portability check), replace the text `/usr/local` with the content of the variable `PREFIX`.

Each SUBST block starts by appending an identifier to `SUBST_CLASSES` (note the `+=`). This identifier can be chosen freely by the package. If there should ever be duplicate identifiers, the `pkgsrc` infrastructure will catch this and fail early, so don't worry about name collisions.

Except for `SUBST_CLASSES`, all variables in a SUBST block are parameterized using this identifier. In the remainder of this section, these parameterized variables are written as `SUBST_STAGE.*`.

```
SUBST_CLASSES+=      paths
SUBST_STAGE.paths=   pre-configure
SUBST_MESSAGE.paths= Fixing absolute paths.
SUBST_FILES.paths=   src/*.c
SUBST_FILES.paths+=  scripts/*.sh
SUBST_SED.paths=     -e 's, "/usr/local, "${PREFIX}, g'
SUBST_SED.paths+=    -e 's, "/var/log, "${VARBASE}/log, g'
SUBST_VARS.paths=    LOCALBASE PREFIX PKGVERSION
```

To get a complete picture about the SUBST substitutions, run **`bmake show-all-subst`**. If something doesn't work as expected, run `pkglint` on the package, which detects several typical mistakes surrounding the SUBST blocks. For any questions that might remain after this, have a look at `mk/subst.mk`.

21.1.11.1. Choosing the time where the substitutions happen

The `SUBST_STAGE.*` is one of `{pre,do,post}`-`{extract,patch,configure,build,test,install}`. Of these, `pre-configure` is used most often, by far. The most popular stages are, in chronological order:

`post-extract`

The substitutions are applied immediately after the distfiles are extracted. Running **`bmake extract`** on the package will leave no traces of the original files.

When the substitution applies to files for which there is also a patch in the `patches/` directory, this means that the patches will be computed based on the result of the substitution. When these patches are sent to the upstream maintainer later, to be fixed in the upstream package, these patches may no longer match what the upstream author is used to. Because of this, `pre-configure` is often a better choice.

`pre-configure`

The substitutions are applied after the patches from the `patches/` directory. This makes it possible to run **`bmake patch`** on the package, after which the patches can be edited using the tools `pkgvi` and `mkpatches` from the `pkgtools/pkgdiff` package.

When updating the patches, it is helpful to explicitly separate the **`bmake patch`** from the **`bmake configure`**, and to only edit the patches between these commands. Otherwise the substitutions from the SUBST block will end up in the patch file. When this happens in really obvious ways, `pkglint` will complain about patches that contain a hard-coded `/usr/pkg` instead of the correct and intended `@PREFIX@`, but it can only detect these really obvious cases.

`do-configure`

This stage should only be used if the package defines a `pre-configure` action itself, and the substitution must happen after that. Typical examples are packages that use the `pre-configure` stage to regenerate the GNU configure script from `configure.ac`.

`post-configure`

This stage is used to fix up any mistakes by the configure stage.

`pre-build`

This stage should only be used for substitutions that are clearly related to building the package, not for fixing the configuration. Substitutions for pathnames (such as replacing `/usr/local` with `${PREFIX}`) or user names (such as replacing `@MY_USER@` with the actual username) belong in `pre-configure` or `post-configure` instead.

`post-build`

Just as with `pre-build`, this stage should only be used for substitutions that are clearly related to building the package, not for fixing the configuration. Substitutions for pathnames (such as replacing `/usr/local` with `${PREFIX}`) or user names (such as replacing `@MY_USER@` with the actual username) belong in `pre-configure` or `post-configure` instead.

A typical use is to update `pkg-config` files to include the `rpath` compiler options.

`pre-install`

In general, the install phase should be as simple as possible. As with the `pre-build` and `post-build` stages, it should not be used to fix pathnames or user names, these belong in `pre-configure` instead. There are only few legitimate use cases for applying substitutions in this stage.

21.1.11.2. Choosing the files where the substitutions happen

The `SUBST_FILES.*` variable contains a list of filename patterns. These patterns are relative to `WRKSR` since that is where most substitutions happen. A typical example is:

```
SUBST_FILES.path=      Makefile */Makefile */*/Makefile *.ch
```

The above patterns, especially the last, are quite broad. The `SUBST` implementation checks that each filename pattern that is mentioned here has an effect. For example, if none of the `*/*/Makefile` files contains the patterns to be found and substituted, that filename pattern is redundant and should be left out. By default, the `SUBST` framework will complain with an error message. If the text to be substituted occurs in some of the files from a single pattern, but not in all of them, that is totally ok, and the `SUBST` framework will only print an `INFO` message for those files.

If there is a good reason for having redundant filename patterns, set `SUBST_NOOP_OK.*` to `yes`.

Another popular way of choosing the files for the substitutions is via a shell command, like this:

```
C_FILES_CMD=          cd ${WRKSR} && ${FIND} . -name '*.c'
SUBST_FILES.path=     ${C_FILES_CMD:sh}
```

The variable name `C_FILES_CMD` in this example is freely chosen and independent of the SUBST framework.

In this variant, the `SUBST_FILES.*` variable lists each file individually. Thereby chances are higher that there are filename patterns in which no substitution happens. Since the SUBST framework cannot know whether the filename patterns in `SUBST_FILES.*` have been explicitly listed in the Makefile (where any redundant filename pattern would be suspicious) or been generated by a shell command (in which redundant filename patterns are more likely and to be expected), it will complain about these redundant filename patterns. Therefore, SUBST blocks that use a shell command to generate the list of filename patterns often need to set `SUBST_NOOP_OK.*` to `yes`.

21.1.11.3. Choosing what to substitute

In most cases, the substitutions are given using one or more `sed(1)` commands, like this:

```
SUBST_SED.path=          -e 's|/usr/local|${PREFIX}|g'
```

Each of the `sed` commands needs to be preceded by the `-e` option and should be specified on a line of its own, to avoid hiding short `sed` commands at the end of a line.

Since the `sed` commands often contain shell metacharacters as the separator (the `|` in the above example), it is common to enclose them in single quotes.

A common substitution is to replace placeholders of the form `@VARNAME@` with their `pkgsrc` counterpart variable `${VARNAME}`. A typical example is:

```
SUBST_VARS.path=          PREFIX
```

This type of substitutions is typically done by the GNU configure scripts during the do-configure stage, but in some cases these need to be overridden. The same pattern is also used when a package defines patches that replace previously hard-coded paths like `/usr/local` with a `@PREFIX@` placeholder first, which then gets substituted by the actual `${PREFIX}` in the pre-configure stage. In many of these cases, it works equally well to just use the SUBST framework to directly replace `/usr/local` with `${PREFIX}`, thereby omitting the intermediate patch file.

If the above is not flexible enough, it is possible to not use `sed` at all for the substitution but to specify an entirely different command, like this:

```
SUBST_FILTER_CMD.path=    LC_ALL=C ${TR} -d '\r'
```

This is used for the few remaining packages in which the distributed files use Windows-style line endings that need to be converted to UNIX-style line endings.

21.1.11.4. Other SUBST variables

When a SUBST block is applied during a package build, a message is logged. The default message is fine for most purposes but can be overridden by setting `SUBST_MESSAGE.*` to an individual message.

21.2. The *fetch* phase

21.2.1. Packages whose distfiles aren't available for plain downloading

If you need to download from a dynamic URL you can set `DYNAMIC_MASTER_SITES` and a **make fetch** will call `files/getsite.sh` with the name of each file to download as an argument, expecting it to output the URL of the directory from which to download it. `graphics/ns-cult3d` is an example of this usage.

If the download can't be automated, because the user must submit personal information to apply for a password, or must pay for the source, or whatever, you can set `FETCH_MESSAGE` to a list of lines that are displayed to the user before aborting the build. Example:

```
FETCH_MESSAGE= "Please download the files"
FETCH_MESSAGE+= "      ${DISTFILES:Q}"
FETCH_MESSAGE+= "manually from ${MASTER_SITES:Q}".
```

21.2.2. How to handle modified distfiles with the 'old' name

Sometimes authors of a software package make some modifications after the software was released, and they put up a new distfile without changing the package's version number. If a package is already in `pkgsrc` at that time, the checksum will no longer match. The contents of the new distfile should be compared against the old one before changing anything, to make sure the distfile was really updated on purpose, and that no trojan horse or so crept in. Please mention that the distfiles were compared and what was found in your commit message.

Then, the correct way to work around this is to set `DIST_SUBDIR` to a unique directory name, usually based on `PKGNAME_NOREV` (but take care with `python` or `ruby` packages, where `PKGNAME` includes a variable prefix). All `DISTFILES` and `PATCHFILES` for this package will be put in that subdirectory of the local distfiles directory. (See Section 21.1.10 for more details.) In case this happens more often, `PKGNAME` can be used (thus including the `nbX` suffix) or a date stamp can be appended, like `${PKGNAME_NOREV}-YYYYMMDD`.

`DIST_SUBDIR` is also used when a distfile's name does not contain a version and the distfile is apt to change. In cases where the likelihood of this is very small, `DIST_SUBDIR` might not be required. Additionally, `DIST_SUBDIR` must not be removed unless the distfile name changes, even if a package is being moved or renamed.

Do not forget regenerating the `distinfo` file after that, since it contains the `DIST_SUBDIR` path in the filenames. Also, increase the `PKGREVISION` if the installed package is different. Furthermore, a mail to the package's authors seems appropriate telling them that changing distfiles after releases without changing the file names is not good practice.

21.2.3. Packages hosted on github.com

Helper methods exist for packages hosted on `github.com` which will often have distfile names that clash with other packages, for example `1.0.tar.gz`. Use one of the three recipes from below:

21.2.3.1. Fetch based on a tagged release

If your distfile URL looks similar to

<https://github.com/username/example/archive/v1.0.zip>, then you are packaging a tagged release.

```
DISTNAME=          example-1.0
MASTER_SITES=      ${MASTER_SITE_GITHUB:=username/}
#GITHUB_PROJECT=   example      # can be omitted if same as DISTNAME
GITHUB_TAG=        v${PKGVERSION_NOREV}
EXTRACT_SUFX=      .zip
```

21.2.3.2. Fetch based on a specific commit before the first release

If your distfile looks similar to

<https://github.com/username/example/archive/988881adc9fc3655077dc2d4d757d480b5ea0e11> and is from a commit before the first release, then set the package version to 0.0.0.N, where N is the number of commits to the repository, and set GITHUB_TAG to the commit hash. This will (almost) ensure that the first tagged release will have a version greater than this one so that package upgrades will function properly.

```
DISTNAME=          example-0.0.0.347
MASTER_SITES=      ${MASTER_SITE_GITHUB:=username/}
#GITHUB_PROJECT=   example      # can be omitted if same as DISTNAME
GITHUB_TAG=        988881adc9fc3655077dc2d4d757d480b5ea0e11
```

21.2.3.3. Fetch based on a specific commit after a release

If your distfile looks similar to

<https://github.com/username/example/archive/988881adc9fc3655077dc2d4d757d480b5ea0e11> and is from a commit after a release, then include the last release version and the commit count since that release in the package version and set GITHUB_TAG to the commit hash. The latest release and commit count are shown in the output of "git describe --tags":

```
# git clone https://github.com/username/example
# cd example
# git describe --tags
1.2.3-5-g988881a
```

```
DISTNAME=          example-1.2.3.5
MASTER_SITES=      ${MASTER_SITE_GITHUB:=username/}
#GITHUB_PROJECT=   example      # can be omitted if same as DISTNAME
GITHUB_TAG=        988881adc9fc3655077dc2d4d757d480b5ea0e11
```

21.2.3.4. Fetch based on release

If your distfile URL looks similar to

<https://github.com/username/example/releases/download/rel-1.6/offensive-1.6.zip>, then you are packaging a release.

```

DISTNAME=      offensive-1.6
PKGNAME=       ${DISTNAME:S/offensive/proper/}
MASTER_SITES=  ${MASTER_SITE_GITHUB:=username/}
GITHUB_PROJECT= example
GITHUB_RELEASE= rel-${PKGVERSION_NOREV} # usually just set this to ${DISTNAME}
EXTRACT_SUFX=  .zip

```

21.3. The *configure* phase

21.3.1. Shared libraries - libtool

pkgsrc supports many different machines, with different object formats like a.out and ELF, and varying abilities to do shared library and dynamic loading at all. To accompany this, varying commands and options have to be passed to the compiler, linker, etc. to get the Right Thing, which can be pretty annoying especially if you don't have all the machines at your hand to test things. The `devel/libtool` pkg can help here, as it just “knows” how to build both static and dynamic libraries from a set of source files, thus being platform-independent.

Here's how to use libtool in a package in seven simple steps:

1. Add `USE_LIBTOOL=yes` to the package Makefile.
2. For library objects, use “`${LIBTOOL} --mode=compile ${CC}`” in place of “`${CC}`”. You could even add it to the definition of `CC`, if only libraries are being built in a given Makefile. This one command will build both PIC and non-PIC library objects, so you need not have separate shared and non-shared library rules.
3. For the linking of the library, remove any “`ar`”, “`ranlib`”, and “`ld -Bshareable`” commands, and instead use:

```

${LIBTOOL} --mode=link \
    ${CC} -o ${.TARGET:.a=.la} \
    ${OBJS:.o=.lo} \
    -rpath ${PREFIX}/lib \
    -version-info major:minor

```

Note that the library is changed to have a `.la` extension, and the objects are changed to have a `.lo` extension. Change `OBJS` as necessary. This automatically creates all of the `.a`, `.so.major.minor`, and ELF symlinks (if necessary) in the build directory. Be sure to include “`-version-info`”, especially when major and minor are zero, as libtool will otherwise strip off the shared library version.

From the libtool manual:

So, libtool library versions are described by three integers:

CURRENT

The most recent interface number that this library implements.

REVISION

The implementation number of the CURRENT interface.

AGE

The difference between the newest and oldest interfaces that this library implements. In other words, the library implements all the interface numbers in the range from number 'CURRENT - AGE' to 'CURRENT'.

If two libraries have identical CURRENT and AGE numbers, then the dynamic linker chooses the library with the greater REVISION number.

The “-release” option will produce different results for a.out and ELF (excluding symlinks) in only one case. An ELF library of the form “libfoo-release.so.x.y” will have a symlink of “libfoo.so.x.y” on an a.out platform. This is handled automatically.

The “-rpath argument” is the install directory of the library being built.

In the PLIST, include only the .la file, the other files will be added automatically.

4. When linking shared object (.so) files, i.e. files that are loaded via dlopen(3), NOT shared libraries, use “-module -avoid-version” to prevent them getting version tacked on.

The PLIST file gets the foo.so entry.

5. When linking programs that depend on these libraries *before* they are installed, preface the cc(1) or ld(1) line with “\${LIBTOOL} --mode=link”, and it will find the correct libraries (static or shared), but please be aware that libtool will not allow you to specify a relative path in -L (such as “-L../somalib”), because it expects you to change that argument to be the .la file. e.g.

```
${LIBTOOL} --mode=link ${CC} -o someprog -L../somalib -lsomalib
```

should be changed to:

```
${LIBTOOL} --mode=link ${CC} -o someprog ../somalib/somalib.la
```

and it will do the right thing with the libraries.

6. When installing libraries, preface the install(1) or cp(1) command with “\${LIBTOOL} --mode=install”, and change the library name to .la. e.g.

```
${LIBTOOL} --mode=install ${BSD_INSTALL_LIB} ${SOMELIB:.a=.la} ${PREFIX}/lib
```

This will install the static .a, shared library, any needed symlinks, and run ldconfig(8).

7. In your PLIST, include only the .la file (this is a change from previous behaviour).

21.3.2. Using libtool on GNU packages that already support libtool

Add `USE_LIBTOOL=yes` to the package Makefile. This will override the package’s own libtool in most cases. For older libtool using packages, libtool is made by ltconfig script during the do-configure step; you can check the libtool script location by doing **make configure; find work*/ -name libtool**.

`LIBTOOL_OVERRIDE` specifies which libtool scripts, relative to `WRKSRC`, to override. By default, it is set to “libtool */libtool */*/libtool”. If this does not match the location of the package’s libtool script(s), set it as appropriate.

If you do not need *.a static libraries built and installed, then use `SHLIBTOOL_OVERRIDE` instead.

If your package makes use of the platform-independent library for loading dynamic shared objects, that comes with libtool (libltdl), you should include `devel/libltdl/buildlink3.mk`.

Some packages use libtool incorrectly so that the package may not work or build in some circumstances. Some of the more common errors are:

- The inclusion of a shared object (-module) as a dependent library in an executable or library. This in itself isn't a problem if one of two things has been done:
 1. The shared object is named correctly, i.e. `libfoo.la`, not `foo.la`
 2. The `-dlopen` option is used when linking an executable.
- The use of `libltdl` without the correct calls to initialisation routines. The function `lt_dlinit()` should be called and the macro `LTDL_SET_PRELOADED_SYMBOLS` included in executables.

21.3.3. GNU Autoconf/Automake

If a package needs GNU autoconf or automake to be executed to regenerate the configure script and Makefile.in makefile templates, then they should be executed in a pre-configure target.

For packages that need only autoconf:

```
AUTOCONF_REQD= 2.50          # if default version is not good enough
USE_TOOLS+=    autoconf      # use "autoconf213" for autoconf-2.13
...

pre-configure:
    cd ${WRKSRC} && autoconf
...

```

and for packages that need automake and autoconf:

```
AUTOMAKE_REQD= 1.7.1          # if default version is not good enough
USE_TOOLS+=    automake       # use "automake14" for automake-1.4
...

pre-configure:
    set -e; cd ${WRKSRC}; \
    aclocal; autoheader; automake -a --foreign -i; autoconf
...

```

Packages which use GNU Automake will almost certainly require GNU Make.

There are times when the configure process makes additional changes to the generated files, which then causes the build process to try to re-execute the automake sequence. This is prevented by touching various files in the configure stage. If this causes problems with your package you can set `AUTOMAKE_OVERRIDE=NO` in the package Makefile.

21.4. Programming languages

21.4.1. C, C++, and Fortran

Compilers for the C, C++, and Fortran languages comes with the NetBSD base system. By default, `pkgsrc` assumes that a package is written in C and will hide all other compilers (via the wrapper framework, see Chapter 18).

To declare which language's compiler a package needs, set the `USE_LANGUAGES` variable. Allowed values currently are:

```
c99, c++, c++03, gnu++03, c++0x, gnu++0x, c++11, gnu++11,
c++14, gnu++14, c++17, gnu++17, c++20, gnu++20, fortran,
fortran77, java, objc, obj-c++, and ada.
```

(and any combination). The default is “c”. Packages using GNU configure scripts, even if written in C++, usually need a C compiler for the configure phase.

21.4.2. Java

If a program is written in Java, use the Java framework in `pkgsrc`. The package must include `../../mk/java-vm.mk`. This Makefile fragment provides the following variables:

- `USE_JAVA` defines if a build dependency on the JDK is added. If `USE_JAVA` is set to “run”, then there is only a runtime dependency on the JDK. The default is “yes”, which also adds a build dependency on the JDK.
- Set `USE_JAVA2` to declare that a package needs a Java2 implementation. The supported values are “yes”, “1.4”, and “1.5”. “yes” accepts any Java2 implementation, “1.4” insists on versions 1.4 or above, and “1.5” only accepts versions 1.5 or above. This variable is not set by default.
- `PKG_JAVA_HOME` is automatically set to the runtime location of the used Java implementation dependency. It may be used to set `JAVA_HOME` to a good value if the program needs this variable to be defined.

21.4.3. Go

If a program is written in Go and has any dependencies on other Go modules, have the package include `../../lang/go/go-module.mk`.

1. Generate a list of those dependencies with **make clean && make patch && make show-go-modules > go-modules.mk**.
2. Prepend

```
.include
    "go-modules.mk"
to any other
.include
```

s.

3. Incorporate these modules in `distinfo` with **make makesum**.

21.4.4. Packages containing Perl scripts

If your package contains interpreted Perl scripts, add “perl” to the `USE_TOOLS` variable and set `REPLACE_PERL` to ensure that the proper interpreter path is set. `REPLACE_PERL` should contain a list of scripts, relative to `WRKSRCDIR`, that you want adjusted. Every occurrence of `*/bin/perl` in a she-bang line will be replaced with the full path to the Perl executable.

If a particular version of Perl is needed, set the `PERL5_REQD` variable to the version number. The default is “5.0”.

See Section 21.6.6 for information about handling Perl modules.

There is also the `REPLACE_PERL6` variable for the language now known as Raku.

21.4.5. Packages containing shell scripts

`REPLACE_SH`, `REPLACE_BASH`, `REPLACE_CSH`, and `REPLACE_KSH` can be used to replace shell hash bangs in files. Please use the appropriate one, preferring `REPLACE_SH` in case this shell is sufficient. Each should contain a list of scripts, relative to `WRKSRCDIR`, that you want adjusted. Every occurrence of the matching shell in a she-bang line will be replaced with the full path to the shell executable. When using `REPLACE_BASH`, don’t forget to add `bash` to `USE_TOOLS`.

21.4.6. Other programming languages

There are further similar `REPLACE` variables available, e.g., `REPLACE_AWK` for packages containing awk scripts, and `REPLACE_R` for R. These two, like the others noted above, have their actions defined centrally in `mk/configure/replace-interpreter.mk`. Other languages define the actions of these variables within their own dedicated part of the tree, e.g., `REPLACE_PHP` is actioned in `lang/php/phpversion.mk`, and `REPLACE_PYTHON` is actioned in `lang/python/application.mk`. For other languages, consult the mk files found within their specific directories (the naming convention varies), or check the list found in Appendix E.

Currently, special handling for other languages varies in `pkgsrc`. If a compiler package provides a `buildlink3.mk` file, include that, otherwise just add a (build) dependency on the appropriate compiler package.

21.5. The *build* phase

The most common failures when building a package are that some platforms do not provide certain header files, functions or libraries, or they provide the functions in a library that the original package author didn’t know. To work around this, you can rewrite the source code in most cases so that it does not use the missing functions or provides a replacement function.

21.5.1. Compiling C and C++ code conditionally

If a package already comes with a GNU configure script, the preferred way to fix the build failure is to change the configure script, not the code. In the other cases, you can utilize the C preprocessor, which defines certain macros depending on the operating system and hardware architecture it compiles for. These macros can be queried using for example `#if defined(__i386)`. Almost every operating system, hardware architecture and compiler has its own macro. For example, if the macros `__GNUC__`, `__i386__` and `__NetBSD__` are all defined, you know that you are using NetBSD on an i386 compatible CPU, and your compiler is GCC.

The list of the following macros for hardware and operating system depends on the compiler that is used. For example, if you want to conditionally compile code on Solaris, don't use `__sun__`, as the SunPro compiler does not define it. Use `__sun` instead.

21.5.1.1. C preprocessor macros to identify the operating system

To distinguish between 4.4 BSD-derived systems and the rest of the world, you should use the following code.

```
#include <sys/param.h>
#if (defined(BSD) && BSD >= 199306)
/* BSD-specific code goes here */
#else
/* non-BSD-specific code goes here */
#endif
```

If this distinction is not fine enough, you can also test for the following macros.

Cygwin	<code>__CYGWIN__</code>
DragonFly	<code>__DragonFly__</code>
FreeBSD	<code>__FreeBSD__</code>
Haiku	<code>__HAIKU__</code>
Interix	<code>__INTERIX</code>
IRIX	<code>__sgi</code> (TODO: get a definite source for this)
Linux	<code>linux</code> , <code>__linux</code> , <code>__linux__</code>
Mac OS X	<code>__APPLE__</code>
MirBSD	<code>__MirBSD__</code> (<code>__OpenBSD__</code> is also defined)
Minix3	<code>__minix</code>
NetBSD	<code>__NetBSD__</code>
OpenBSD	<code>__OpenBSD__</code>
Solaris	<code>sun</code> , <code>__sun</code>

21.5.1.2. C preprocessor macros to identify the hardware architecture

i386	<code>i386</code> , <code>__i386</code> , <code>__i386__</code>
MIPS	<code>__mips</code>
SPARC	<code>sparc</code> , <code>__sparc</code>

21.5.1.3. C preprocessor macros to identify the compiler

```

GCC          __GNUC__ (major version), __GNUC_MINOR__
MIPSpro      _COMPILER_VERSION (0x741 for MIPSpro 7.41)
SunPro       __SUNPRO_C (0x570 for Sun C 5.7)
SunPro C++   __SUNPRO_CC (0x580 for Sun C++ 5.8)

```

21.5.2. How to handle compiler bugs

Some source files trigger bugs in the compiler, based on combinations of compiler version and architecture and almost always relation to optimisation being enabled. Common symptoms are gcc internal errors or never finishing compiling a file.

Typically, a workaround involves testing the `MACHINE_ARCH` and compiler version, disabling optimisation for that combination of file, `MACHINE_ARCH` and compiler.

This used to be a big problem in the past, but is rarely needed now as compiler technology has matured. If you still need to add a compiler specific workaround, please do so in the file `hacks.mk` and describe the symptom and compiler version as detailed as possible.

21.5.3. No such file or directory

Compilation sometimes fails with an error message like this:

```

.../x11/gtk3/work/gtk+-3.24.12/gdk/gdktypes.h:35:10:
    fatal error: pango/pango.h: No such file or directory

```

The proper way to fix this problem depends on the type of the header, which is described in the following sections.

21.5.3.1. Headers from other packages

If the header name looks like it comes from a different package, that other package should be included via the `buildlink3` framework.

First, look whether the header is somewhere in the `buildlink3` directory below `WRKDIR`. In the above case of the missing Pango header:

```
$ find work/.buildlink/ -print | grep -F pango/pango.h
```

In the case of Pango, the output is:

```
work/.buildlink/include/pango-1.0/pango/pango.h
```

If the `pango/pango.h` file were placed directly in the `.buildlink` directory, it would have been found automatically. There is an extra `pango-1.0` path component though, which means that the compiler command line must contain an option of the form

`-I${BUILDLINK3_PREFIX.pango}/include/pango-1.0`. In most cases this option is generated by the configure script, which can be examined using:

```
$ $ grep -o '[-]I[^[:space:]]*/pango[^[:space:]]*' work/*/Makefile
-I/usr/pkg/include/pango-1.0
-I/usr/pkg/include/pango-1.0
-I/usr/pkg/include/pango-1.0
-I/usr/pkg/include/pango-1.0
-I/usr/pkg/include/pango-1.0
```

This looks good. These options are transformed by the `buildlink` wrapper to refer to the correct path inside `work/.buildlink`.

Since the compilation fails though, examine the compiler command lines in `work/.work.log` to see whether the `-I` option is included in the particular command line.

To further analyze the situation, run **`bmake build-env`**, which sets up an interactive, realistic environment including all the `pkgsrc` wrapper commands and environment variables. From there, try to compile some simple example programs that use the header.

21.5.3.2. Headers generated during the build

If the name of the header seems to come from the package itself, and if the build is run with parallel jobs, the package may have some undeclared dependencies between the `.c` and the `.h` files, and a C file is compiled before its required header is generated.

To see whether the build runs with parallel jobs, run **`bmake show-all-build | grep JOBS`**. Its output looks like this:

```
usr  MAKE_JOBS=          7
pkg  MAKE_JOBS_SAFE      # undefined
def  _MAKE_JOBS_N=       7
```

In this case the `pkgsrc` user has asked `pkgsrc` to build packages with 7 jobs in parallel (`MAKE_JOBS`). The package could have disabled parallel builds by setting `MAKE_JOBS_SAFE` to `no`, but in this case it hasn't.

To see whether the build failure is caused by parallel builds, first save the exact error message and a bit of context, maybe you need it later for reporting a bug. Next, run:

```
MAKE_JOBS_SAFE=no bmake clean build
```

If that succeeds, file a bug report (<https://www.NetBSD.org/cgi-bin/sendpr.cgi?gndb=netbsd>) against the `pkgsrc` package, including the exact error message and the contents of your `mk.conf` file.

21.5.3.3. Symlinks

`Pkgsrc` does not work reliably if any of `LOCALBASE`, `VARBASE` or `WRKDIR` contains a symlink. Since 2019Q2, the `pkgsrc` bootstrap program prevents installing `pkgsrc` in symlink-based directories. Existing `pkgsrc` installations are not checked for symlinks though.

The "No such file or directory" error messages are a typical symptom of symlinks, and it's quite difficult to find out that this is the actual cause.

21.5.3.4. Stale working directories

When building a hierarchy of packages, it may happen that one package is built and then `pkgsrc` is updated. This situation can provoke various hard to diagnose build errors. To clean up the situation:

```
$ (cd ../../ && test -f mk/bsd.pkg.mk && rm -rf */*/work)
```

(The test for `bsd.pkg.mk` just prevents running this command in the wrong directory.)

If you have set `WRKOBJDIR` in `mk.conf`, remove that directory as well.

21.5.3.5. Other possible reasons

On platforms other than BSD, third-party packages are installed in `/usr/include`, together with the base system. This means that `pkgsrc` cannot distinguish between headers provided by the base system (which it needs) and headers from third-party packages (which are often included in `pkgsrc` as well). This can lead to subtle version mismatches.

In `pkgsrc` installations that have been active for several years, it may happen that some files are manually deleted. To exclude this unlikely reason, run **pkg_admin check**.

It may help to run **pkg_admin rebuild-tree** to check/fix dependencies.

If all of the above doesn't help, see Chapter 2 for contact information. Be prepared to describe what you have tried so far and what any error messages were.

21.5.4. Undefined reference to “...”

This error message often means that a package did not link to a shared library it needs. The following functions are known to cause this error message over and over.

Function	Library	Affected platforms
<code>accept</code> , <code>bind</code> , <code>connect</code>	<code>-lsocket</code>	Solaris
<code>crypt</code>	<code>-lcrypt</code>	DragonFly, NetBSD
<code>dlopen</code> , <code>dlsym</code>	<code>-ldl</code>	Linux
<code>gethost*</code>	<code>-lnsl</code>	Solaris
<code>inet_aton</code>	<code>-lresolv</code>	Solaris
<code>nanosleep</code> , <code>sem_*</code> , <code>timer_*</code>	<code>-lrt</code>	Solaris
<code>openpty</code>	<code>-lutil</code>	Linux

To fix these linker errors, it is often sufficient to say `LIBS.OperatingSystem+= -lfoo` to the package `Makefile` and then say **bmake clean; bmake**.

21.5.4.1. Special issue: The SunPro compiler

When you are using the SunPro compiler, there is another possibility. That compiler cannot handle the following code:

```
extern int extern_func(int);
```

```
static inline int
inline_func(int x)
{
    return extern_func(x);
}

int main(void)
{
    return 0;
}
```

It generates the code for `inline_func` even if that function is never used. This code then refers to `extern_func`, which can usually not be resolved. To solve this problem you can try to tell the package to disable inlining of functions.

21.5.5. Running out of memory

Sometimes packages fail to build because the compiler runs into an operating system specific soft limit. With the `UNLIMIT_RESOURCES` variable `pkgsrc` can be told to unlimit the resources. Currently, the allowed values are any combination of “`cputime`”, “`datasize`”, “`memorysize`”, and “`stacksize`”. Setting this variable is similar to running the shell builtin **`ulimit`** command to raise the maximum data segment size or maximum stack size of a process, respectively, to their hard limits.

21.6. The *install* phase

21.6.1. Creating needed directories

The BSD-compatible **`install`** supplied with some operating systems cannot create more than one directory at a time. As such, you should call `${INSTALL_*_DIR}` like this:

```
${INSTALL_DATA_DIR} ${PREFIX}/dir1
${INSTALL_DATA_DIR} ${PREFIX}/dir2
```

You can also just append “`dir1 dir2`” to the `INSTALLATION_DIRS` variable, which will automatically do the right thing.

21.6.2. Where to install documentation

In general, documentation should be installed into `${PREFIX}/share/doc/${PKGBASE}` or `${PREFIX}/share/doc/${PKGNAME}` (the latter includes the version number of the package).

Many modern packages using GNU `autoconf` allow to set the directory where HTML documentation is installed with the “`--with-html-dir`” option. Sometimes using this flag is needed because otherwise the documentation ends up in `${PREFIX}/share/doc/html` or other places.

An exception to the above is that library API documentation generated with the `textproc/gtk-doc` tools, for use by special browsers (`devhelp`) should be left at their default location, which is `${PREFIX}/share/gtk-doc`. Such documentation can be recognized from files ending in `.devhelp` or `.devhelp2`. (It is also acceptable to install such files in `${PREFIX}/share/doc/${PKGBASE}` or `${PREFIX}/share/doc/${PKGNAME}`; the `.devhelp*` file must be directly in that directory then, no additional subdirectory level is allowed in this case. This is usually achieved by using `--with-html-dir=${PREFIX}/share/doc`. `${PREFIX}/share/gtk-doc` is preferred though.)

21.6.3. Installing highscore files

Certain packages, most of them in the games category, install a score file that allows all users on the system to record their highscores. In order for this to work, the binaries need to be installed setgid and the score files owned by the appropriate group and/or owner (traditionally the "games" user/group). Set `USE_GAMESGROUP` to yes to support this. The following variables, documented in more detail in `mk/defaults/mk.conf`, control this behaviour: `GAMEDATAMODE`, `GAMEDIRMODE`, `GAMES_GROUP`, `GAMEMODE`, `GAME_USER`. Other useful variables are: `GAMEDIR_PERMS`, `GAMEDATA_PERMS` and `SETGID_GAMES_PERMS`.

An example that illustrates some of the variables described above is `games/moon-buggy`. `OWN_DIRS_PERMS` is used to properly set directory permissions of the directory where the scorefile is saved, `REQD_FILES_PERMS` is used to create a dummy scorefile (`mbscore`) with the proper permissions and `SPECIAL_PERMS` is used to install setgid the game binary:

```
USE_GAMESGROUP=          yes

BUILD_DEFS+=             VARBASE

OWN_DIRS_PERMS+=         ${VARBASE}/games/moon-buggy ${GAMEDIR_PERMS}
REQD_FILES_PERMS+=       /dev/null ${VARBASE}/games/moon-buggy/mbscore ${GAMEDATA_PERMS}
SPECIAL_PERMS+=          ${PREFIX}/bin/moon-buggy ${SETGID_GAMES_PERMS}
```

Various `INSTALL_*` variables are also available: `INSTALL_GAME` to install setgid game binaries, `INSTALL_GAME_DIR` to install game directories that are needed to be accessed by setgid games and `INSTALL_GAME_DATA` to install scorefiles.

A package should therefore never hard code file ownership or access permissions but rely on `*_PERMS` as described above or alternatively on `INSTALL_GAME`, `INSTALL_GAME_DATA` and `INSTALL_GAME_DIR` to set these correctly.

21.6.4. Adding DESTDIR support to packages

`DESTDIR` support means that a package installs into a staging directory, not the final location of the files. Then a binary package is created which can be used for installation as usual. There are two ways: Either the package must install as root ("`destdir`") or the package can install as non-root user ("`user-destdir`").

- `PKG_DESTDIR_SUPPORT` has to be set to "`destdir`" or "`user-destdir`". By default `PKG_DESTDIR_SUPPORT` is set to "`user-destdir`" to help catching more potential packaging problems. If `bsd.prefs.mk` is included in the Makefile, `PKG_DESTDIR_SUPPORT` needs to be set before the inclusion.

- All installation operations have to be prefixed with `${DESTDIR}`.
- automake gets this `DESTDIR` mostly right automatically. Many manual rules and pre/post-install often are incorrect; fix them.
- If files are installed with special owner/group use `SPECIAL_PERMS`.
- In general, packages should support `UNPRIVILEGED` to be able to use `DESTDIR`.

21.6.5. Packages with hardcoded paths to other interpreters

Your package may also contain scripts with hardcoded paths to other interpreters besides (or as well as) Perl. To correct the full pathname to the script interpreter, you need to set the following definitions in your Makefile (we shall use **tclsh** in this example):

```
REPLACE_INTERPRETER+=    tcl
REPLACE.tcl.old=         ./bin/tclsh
REPLACE.tcl.new=         ${PREFIX}/bin/tclsh
REPLACE_FILES.tcl=       # list of tcl scripts which need to be fixed,
# relative to ${WRKSRCSRC}, just as in REPLACE_PERL
```

Note: Before March 2006, these variables were called `_REPLACE.*` and `_REPLACE_FILES.*`.

21.6.6. Packages installing Perl modules

Makefiles of packages providing perl5 modules should include the Makefile fragment `../lang/perl5/module.mk`. It provides a **do-configure** target for the standard perl configuration for such modules as well as various hooks to tune this configuration. See comments in this file for details.

Perl5 modules will install into different places depending on the version of perl used during the build process. To address this, `pkgsrc` will append lines to the `PLIST` corresponding to the files listed in the installed `.packlist` file generated by most perl5 modules. This is invoked by defining `PERL5_PACKLIST` to a space-separated list of packlist files relative to `PERL5_PACKLIST_DIR` (`PERL5_INSTALLVENDORARCH` by default), e.g.:

```
PERL5_PACKLIST= auto/Pg/.packlist
```

The perl5 config variables `installarchlib`, `installscript`, `installvendorbin`, `installvendorscript`, `installvendorarch`, `installvendorlib`, `installvendorman1dir`, and `installvendorman3dir` represent those locations in which components of perl5 modules may be installed, provided as variable with uppercase and prefixed with `PERL5_`, e.g. `PERL5_INSTALLARCHLIB` and may be used by perl5 packages that don't have a packlist. These variables are also substituted for in the `PLIST` as uppercase prefixed with `PERL5_SUB_`.

21.6.7. Packages installing info files

Some packages install info files or use the “makeinfo” or “install-info” commands. `INFO_FILES` should be defined in the package Makefile so that `INSTALL` and `DEINSTALL` scripts will be generated to handle

registration of the info files in the Info directory file. The “install-info” command used for the info files registration is either provided by the system, or by a special purpose package automatically added as dependency if needed.

PKGINFO_DIR is the directory under `${PREFIX}` where info files are primarily located. PKGINFO_DIR defaults to “info” and can be overridden by the user.

The info files for the package should be listed in the package `PLIST`; however any split info files need not be listed.

A package which needs the “makeinfo” command at build time must add “makeinfo” to `USE_TOOLS` in its Makefile. If a minimum version of the “makeinfo” command is needed it should be noted with the `TEXINFO_REQD` variable in the package Makefile. By default, a minimum version of 3.12 is required. If the system does not provide a **makeinfo** command or if it does not match the required minimum, a build dependency on the `devel/gtexinfo` package will be added automatically.

The build and installation process of the software provided by the package should not use the **install-info** command as the registration of info files is the task of the package `INSTALL` script, and it must use the appropriate **makeinfo** command.

To achieve this goal, the `pkgsrc` infrastructure creates overriding scripts for the **install-info** and **makeinfo** commands in a directory listed early in `PATH`.

The script overriding **install-info** has no effect except the logging of a message. The script overriding **makeinfo** logs a message and according to the value of `TEXINFO_REQD` either runs the appropriate **makeinfo** command or exit on error.

21.6.8. Packages installing man pages

All packages that install manual pages should install them into the same directory, so that there is one common place to look for them. In `pkgsrc`, this place is `${PREFIX}/${PKGMANDIR}`, and this expression should be used in packages. The default for `PKGMANDIR` is “man”. Another often-used value is “share/man”.

Note: The support for a custom `PKGMANDIR` is far from complete.

The `PLIST` files can just use `man/` as the top level directory for the man page file entries, and the `pkgsrc` framework will convert as needed. In all other places, the correct `PKGMANDIR` must be used.

Packages that are configured with `GNU_CONFIGURE` set as “yes”, by default will use the `./configure` `--mandir` switch to set where the man pages should be installed. The path is `GNU_CONFIGURE_MANDIR` which defaults to `${PREFIX}/${PKGMANDIR}`.

Packages that use `GNU_CONFIGURE` but do not use `--mandir`, can set `CONFIGURE_HAS_MANDIR` to “no”. Or if the `./configure` script uses a non-standard use of `--mandir`, you can set `GNU_CONFIGURE_MANDIR` as needed.

See Section 19.5 for information on installation of compressed manual pages.

21.6.9. Packages installing X11 fonts

If a package installs font files, you will need to rebuild the fonts database in the directory where they get installed at installation and deinstallation time. This can be automatically done by using the `pkginstall` framework.

You can list the directories where fonts are installed in the `FONTSDIRS.type` variables, where `type` can be one of “`ttf`”, “`type1`” or “`x11`”. Also make sure that the database file `fonts.dir` is not listed in the `PLIST`.

Note that you should not create new directories for fonts; instead use the standard ones to avoid that the user needs to manually configure his X server to find them.

21.6.10. Packages installing SGML or XML data

If a package installs SGML or XML data files that need to be registered in system-wide catalogs (like DTDs, sub-catalogs, etc.), you need to take some extra steps:

1. Include `../.. /textproc/xmlcatmgr/catalogs.mk` in your `Makefile`, which takes care of registering those files in system-wide catalogs at installation and deinstallation time.
2. Set `SGML_CATALOGS` to the full path of any SGML catalogs installed by the package.
3. Set `XML_CATALOGS` to the full path of any XML catalogs installed by the package.
4. Set `SGML_ENTRIES` to individual entries to be added to the SGML catalog. These come in groups of three strings; see `xmlcatmgr(1)` for more information (specifically, arguments recognized by the ‘`add`’ action). Note that you will normally not use this variable.
5. Set `XML_ENTRIES` to individual entries to be added to the XML catalog. These come in groups of three strings; see `xmlcatmgr(1)` for more information (specifically, arguments recognized by the ‘`add`’ action). Note that you will normally not use this variable.

21.6.11. Packages installing extensions to the MIME database

If a package provides extensions to the MIME database by installing `.xml` files inside `${PREFIX}/share/mime/packages`, you need to take some extra steps to ensure that the database is kept consistent with respect to these new files:

1. Include `../.. /databases/shared-mime-info/mimedb.mk` (avoid using the `buildlink3.mk` file from this same directory, which is reserved for inclusion from other `buildlink3.mk` files). It takes care of rebuilding the MIME database at installation and deinstallation time, and disallows any access to it directly from the package.
2. Check the `PLIST` and remove any entries under the `share/mime` directory, *except* for files saved under `share/mime/packages`. The former are handled automatically by the `update-mime-database` program, but the latter are package-dependent and must be removed by the package that installed them in the first place.
3. Remove any `share/mime/*` directories from the `PLIST`. They will be handled by the `shared-mime-info` package.

21.6.12. Packages using intltool

If a package uses intltool during its build, add `intltool` to the `USE_TOOLS`, which forces it to use the intltool package provided by `pkgsrc`, instead of the one bundled with the distribution file.

This tracks intltool's build-time dependencies and uses the latest available version; this way, the package benefits of any bug fixes that may have appeared since it was released.

21.6.13. Packages installing startup scripts

If a package contains a `rc.d` script, it won't be copied into the startup directory by default, but you can enable it, by adding the option `PKG_RCD_SCRIPTS=YES` in `mk.conf`. This option will copy the scripts into `/etc/rc.d` when a package is installed, and it will automatically remove the scripts when the package is deinstalled.

21.6.14. Packages installing TeX modules

If a package installs TeX packages into the `texmf` tree, the `ls-R` database of the tree needs to be updated.

Note: Except the main TeX packages such as `kpathsea`, packages should install files into `${PREFIX}/share/texmf-dist`, not `${PREFIX}/share/texmf`.

1. Include `../../print/kpathsea/texmf.mk`. This takes care of rebuilding the `ls-R` database at installation and deinstallation time.
2. If your package installs files into a `texmf` tree other than the one at `${PREFIX}/share/texmf-dist`, set `TEX_TEXMF_DIRS` to the list of all `texmf` trees that need database update.

If your package also installs font map files that need to be registered using **updmap**, include `../../print/tex-tetex/map.mk` and set `TEX_MAP_FILES` and/or `TEX_MIXEDMAP_FILES` to the list of all such font map files. Then **updmap** will be run automatically at installation/deinstallation to enable/disable font map files for TeX output drivers.
3. Make sure that none of `ls-R` databases are included in `PLIST`, as they will be removed only by the `kpathsea` package.

21.6.15. Packages supporting running binaries in emulation

There are some packages that provide libraries and executables for running binaries from a one operating system on a different one (if the latter supports it). One example is running Linux binaries on NetBSD.

The `pkgtools/rpm2pkg` helps in extracting and packaging Linux rpm packages.

The `CHECK_SHLIBS` can be set to `no` to avoid the **check-shlibs** target, which tests if all libraries for each installed executable can be found by the dynamic linker. Since the standard dynamic linker is run, this fails for emulation packages, because the libraries used by the emulation are not in the standard directories.

21.6.16. Packages installing hicolor icons

If a package installs images under the `share/icons/hicolor` and/or updates the `share/icons/hicolor/icon-theme.cache` database, you need to take some extra steps to make sure that the shared theme directory is handled appropriately and that the cache database is rebuilt:

1. Include `../../graphics/hicolor-icon-theme/buildlink3.mk`.
2. Check the `PLIST` and remove the entry that refers to the theme cache.
3. Ensure that the `PLIST` does not remove the shared icon directories from the `share/icons/hicolor` hierarchy because they will be handled automatically.

The best way to verify that the `PLIST` is correct with respect to the last two points is to regenerate it using **make print-PLIST**.

21.6.17. Packages installing desktop files

If a package installs `.desktop` files under `share/applications` and these include MIME information (MimeType key), you need to take extra steps to ensure that they are registered into the MIME database:

1. Include `../../sysutils/desktop-file-utils/desktopdb.mk`.
2. Check the `PLIST` and remove the entry that refers to the `share/applications/mimeinfo.cache` file. It will be handled automatically.

The best way to verify that the `PLIST` is correct with respect to the last point is to regenerate it using **make print-PLIST**.

21.7. Marking packages as having problems

In some cases one does not have the time to solve a problem immediately. In this case, one can plainly mark a package as broken. For this, one just sets the variable `BROKEN` to the reason why the package is broken (similar to the `PKG_FAIL_REASON` variable). A user trying to build the package will immediately be shown this message, and the build will not be even tried.

`BROKEN` packages are removed from `pkgsrc` in irregular intervals.

Chapter 22.

GNOME packaging and porting

Quoting GNOME's web site (<https://www.gnome.org/>):

The GNOME project provides two things: The GNOME desktop environment, an intuitive and attractive desktop for users, and the GNOME development platform, an extensive framework for building applications that integrate into the rest of the desktop.

pkgsrc provides a seamless way to automatically build and install a complete GNOME environment *under many different platforms*. We can say with confidence that pkgsrc is one of the most advanced build and packaging systems for GNOME due to its included technologies buildlink3, the wrappers and tools framework and automatic configuration file management. Lots of efforts are put into achieving a completely clean deinstallation of installed software components.

Given that pkgsrc is NetBSD (<https://www.NetBSD.org/>)'s official packaging system, the above also means that great efforts are put into making GNOME work under this operating system.

This chapter is aimed at pkgsrc developers and other people interested in helping our GNOME porting and packaging efforts. It provides instructions on how to manage the existing packages and some important information regarding their internals.

We need your help!: Should you have some spare cycles to devote to NetBSD, pkgsrc and GNOME and are willing to learn new exciting stuff, please jump straight to the pending work (<https://www.NetBSD.org/contrib/projects.html#gnome>) list! There is still a long way to go to get a fully-functional GNOME desktop under NetBSD and we need your help to achieve it!

22.1. Meta packages

pkgsrc includes three GNOME-related meta packages:

- `meta-pkgs/gnome-base`: Provides the core GNOME desktop environment. It only includes the necessary bits to get it to boot correctly, although it may lack important functionality for daily operation. The idea behind this package is to let end users build their own configurations on top of this one, first installing this meta package to achieve a functional setup and then adding individual applications.
- `meta-pkgs/gnome`: Provides a complete installation of the GNOME platform and desktop as defined by the GNOME project; this is based on the components distributed in the `platform/x.y/x.y.z/sources` and `desktop/x.y/x.y.z/sources` directories of the official FTP server. Developer-only tools found in those directories are not installed unless required by some other component to work properly. Similarly, packages from the bindings set (`bindings/x.y/x.y.z/sources`) are not pulled in unless required as a dependency for an end-user component. This package "extends" `meta-pkgs/gnome-base`.

- `meta-pkgs/gnome-devel`: Installs all the tools required to build a GNOME component when fetched from the CVS repository. These are required to let the **autogen.sh** scripts work appropriately.

In all these packages, the `DEPENDS` lines are sorted in a way that eases updates: a package may depend on other packages listed before it but not on any listed after it. It is very important to keep this order to ease updates so... *do not change it to alphabetical sorting!*

22.2. Packaging a GNOME application

Almost all GNOME applications are written in C and use a common set of tools as their build system. Things get different with the new bindings to other languages (such as Python), but the following will give you a general idea on the minimum required tools:

- Almost all GNOME applications use the GNU Autotools as their build system. As a general rule you will need to tell this to your package:

```
GNU_CONFIGURE=yes
USE_LIBTOOL=yes
USE_TOOLS+=gmake
```

- If the package uses `pkg-config` to detect dependencies, add this tool to the list of required utilities:

```
USE_TOOLS+=pkg-config
```

Also use `pkgtools/verifypc` at the end of the build process to ensure that you did not miss to specify any dependency in your package and that the version requirements are all correct.

- If the package uses `intltool`, be sure to add `intltool` to the `USE_TOOLS` to handle dependencies and to force the package to use the latest available version.
- If the package uses `gtk-doc` (a documentation generation utility), do *not* add a dependency on it. The tool is rather big and the distfile should come with pregenerated documentation anyway; if it does not, it is a bug that you ought to report. For such packages you should disable `gtk-doc` (unless it is the default):

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=--disable-gtk-doc
```

The default location of installed HTML files (`share/gtk-doc/<package-name>`) is correct and should not be changed unless the package insists on installing them somewhere else. Otherwise programs as **devhelp** will not be able to open them. You can do that with an entry similar to:

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=--with-html-dir=${PREFIX}/share/gtk-doc/...
```

GNOME uses multiple *shared* directories and files under the installation prefix to maintain databases. In this context, shared means that those exact same directories and files are used among several different packages, leading to conflicts in the `PLIST`. `pkgsrc` currently includes functionality to handle the most common cases, so you have to forget about using `@unexec ${RMDIR}` lines in your file lists and omitting shared files from them. If you find yourself doing those, *your package is most likely incorrect*.

The following table lists the common situations that result in using shared directories or files. For each of them, the appropriate solution is given. After applying the solution be sure to *regenerate the package's file list* with **make print-PLIST** and ensure it is correct.

Table 22-1. PLIST handling for GNOME packages

If the package...	Then...
Installs icons under the <code>share/icons/hicolor</code> hierarchy or updates <code>share/icons/hicolor/icon-theme.cache</code> .	See Section 21.6.16.
Installs files under <code>share/mime/packages</code> .	See Section 21.6.11.
Installs <code>.desktop</code> files under <code>share/applications</code> and these include MIME information.	See Section 21.6.17.

22.3. Updating GNOME to a newer version

When seeing GNOME as a whole, there are two kinds of updates:

Major update

Given that there is still a very long way for GNOME 3 (if it ever appears), we consider a major update one that goes from a `2.X` version to a `2.Y` one, where `Y` is even and greater than `X`. These are hard to achieve because they introduce lots of changes in the components' code and almost all GNOME distfiles are updated to newer versions. Some of them can even break API and ABI compatibility with the previous major version series. As a result, the update needs to be done all at once to minimize breakage.

A major update typically consists of around 80 package updates and the addition of some new ones.

Minor update

We consider a minor update one that goes from a `2.A.X` version to a `2.A.Y` one where `Y` is greater than `X`. These are easy to achieve because they do not update all GNOME components, can be done in an incremental way and do not break API nor ABI compatibility.

A minor update typically consists of around 50 package updates, although the numbers here may vary a lot.

In order to update the GNOME components in `pkgsrc` to a new stable release (either major or minor), the following steps should be followed:

1. Get a list of all the tarballs that form the new release by using the following commands. These will leave the full list of the components' distfiles into the `list.txt` file:

```
% echo ls "*.tar.bz2" | \
    ftp -v ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/platform/x.y/x.y.z/sources/ | \
    awk '{ print $9 }' >list.txt
% echo ls "*.tar.bz2" | \
    ftp -v ftp://ftp.gnome.org/pub/gnome/desktop/x.y/x.y.z/sources/ | \
    awk '{ print $9 }' >>list.txt
```

2. Open each meta package's `Makefile` and bump their version to the release you are updating them to. The three meta packages should be always consistent with versioning. Obviously remove any `PKGREVISIONS` that might be in them.

3. For each meta package, update all its `DEPENDS` lines to match the latest versions as shown by the above commands. Do *not* list any newer version (even if found in the FTP) because the meta packages are supposed to list the exact versions that form a specific GNOME release. Exceptions are permitted here if a newer version solves a serious issue in the overall desktop experience; these typically come in the form of a revision bump in `pkgsrc`, not in newer versions from the developers.
 Packages not listed in the `list.txt` file should be updated to the latest version available (if found in `pkgsrc`). This is the case, for example, of the dependencies on the GNU Autotools in the `meta-pkgs/gnome-devel` meta package.
4. Generate a patch from the modified meta packages and extract the list of "new" lines. This will provide you an outline on what packages need to be updated in `pkgsrc` and in what order:

```
% cvs diff -u gnome-devel gnome-base gnome | grep '^+D' >todo.txt
```
5. For major desktop updates it is recommended to zap all your installed packages and start over from scratch at this point.
6. Now comes the longest step by far: iterate over the contents of `todo.txt` and update the packages listed in it in order. For major desktop updates none of these should be committed until the entire set is completed because there are chances of breaking not-yet-updated packages.
7. Once the packages are up to date and working, commit them to the tree one by one with appropriate log messages. At the end, commit the three meta package updates and all the corresponding changes to the `doc/CHANGES-<YEAR>` and `pkgsrc/doc/TOD0` files.

22.4. Patching guidelines

GNOME is a very big component in `pkgsrc` which approaches 100 packages. Please, it is very important that you always, always, **always** feed back any portability fixes you do to a GNOME package to the mainstream developers (see Section 12.3.5). This is the only way to get their attention on portability issues and to ensure that future versions can be built out-of-the box on NetBSD. The less custom patches in `pkgsrc`, the easier further updates are. Those developers in charge of issuing major GNOME updates will be grateful if you do that.

The most common places to report bugs are the GNOME's GitLab (<https://gitlab.gnome.org/GNOME>) and the freedesktop.org's GitLab (<https://gitlab.freedesktop.org/explore/groups>). Not all components use these to track bugs, but most of them do. Do not be short on your reports: always provide detailed explanations of the current failure, how it can be improved to achieve maximum portability and, if at all possible, provide a patch against the main Git branch. The more verbose you are, the higher chances of your patch being accepted.

Also, please avoid using preprocessor magic to fix portability issues. While the FreeBSD GNOME people are doing a great job in porting GNOME to their operating system, the official GNOME sources are now plagued by conditionals that check for `__FreeBSD__` and similar macros. This hurts portability. Please see our patching guidelines (Section 12.3.4) for more details.

Chapter 23.

Submitting and Committing

23.1. Submitting binary packages

Our policy is that we accept binaries only from pkgsrc developers to guarantee that the packages don't contain any trojan horses etc. This is not to annoy anyone but rather to protect our users! You're still free to put up your home-made binary packages and tell the world where to get them. NetBSD developers doing bulk builds and wanting to upload them please see Chapter 8.

23.2. Submitting source packages (for non-NetBSD-developers)

Firstly, you can import new packages into pkgsrc-wip ("pkgsrc work-in-progress"); see the homepage at <https://pkgsrc.org/wip/> for details.

Next, check that your package is complete, compiles and runs well; see Chapter 14 and the rest of this document. Run the `pkgtools/pkglint` tool and fix any errors that appear.

Finally, send a report to the pkgsrc bug tracking system, either with the `send-pr(1)` command, or if you don't have that, go to the web page <https://www.NetBSD.org/support/send-pr.html>, which contains some instructions and a link to a form where you can submit packages. The `sysutils/gtk-send-pr` package is also available as a substitute for either of the above two tools.

In the form of the problem report, the category should be "pkg", the synopsis should include the package name and version number, and the description field should contain a short description of your package (contents of the `COMMENT` variable or `DESCR` file are OK).

23.3. General notes when adding, updating, or removing packages

Please note all package additions, updates, moves, and removals in `pkgsrc/doc/CHANGES-YYYY`. It's very important to keep this file up to date and conforming to the existing format, because it will be used by scripts to automatically update pages on www.NetBSD.org (<https://www.NetBSD.org/>) and other sites. Additionally, check the `pkgsrc/doc/TODO` file and remove the entry for the package you updated or removed, in case it was mentioned there.

When the `PKGVERSION` of a package is bumped, the change should appear in `pkgsrc/doc/CHANGES-YYYY` if it is security related or otherwise relevant. Mass bumps that result from a dependency being updated should not be mentioned. In all other cases it's the developer's decision.

There is a make target that helps in creating proper `CHANGES-YYYY` entries: **make changes-entry**. It uses the optional `CTYPE` and `NETBSD_LOGIN_NAME` variables. The general usage is to first make sure that your `CHANGES-YYYY` file is up-to-date (to avoid having to resolve conflicts later-on) and then to **cd** to the package directory. For package updates, **make changes-entry** is enough. For new packages, or package

moves or removals, set the `CTYPE` variable on the command line to "Added", "Moved", or "Removed". You can set `NETBSD_LOGIN_NAME` in `mk.conf` if your local login name is not the same as your NetBSD login name. The target also automatically removes possibly existing entries for the package in the `TODO` file. Don't forget to commit the changes, e.g. by using **make commit-changes-entry**! If you are not using a checkout directly from `cvs.NetBSD.org`, but e.g. a local copy of the repository, you can set `USE_NETBSD_REPO=yes`. This makes the `cvs` commands use the main repository.

23.4. Commit Messages

For several years, there have been mirrors of `pkgsrc` in `fossil`, `git`, and `hg`. Standard practise when using these tools is to make the first line of a commit message function as a summary that can be read without the rest, such as is commonly done with "git log --oneline". For this reason, we have the following guidelines for `pkgsrc` commit messages:

- Start the commit message with a line that explains the big picture in 65 characters or less. When a commit is for one package, include the name of the package. For updates, include the version to which it is updated.
- Leave the next line empty.
- Then come the details for the commit (changes in that package, reason for a change) and any relevant PRs. Wrap this section.

Here is an example:

```
libxslt: update to 1.0.30

Changes since 1.0.29:
...
```

Here is another example:

```
mk/bsd.pkg.mk: enable SSP by default on NetBSD

(rationale)
```

Commit messages are final: no "cvs admin" is allowed on the `pkgsrc` repository to change commit messages.

23.5. Committing: Adding a package to CVS

This section is only of interest for `pkgsrc` developers with write access to the `pkgsrc` repository.

When the package is finished, “cvs add” the files. Start by adding the directory and then files in the directory. Don’t forget to add the new package to the category’s `Makefile`. Make sure you don’t forget any files; you can check by running “cvs status”. An example:

```
$ cd ../pkgsrc/category
$ cvs add pkgname
$ cd pkgname
$ cvs add DESCR Makefile PLIST distinfo buildlink3.mk patches
$ cvs add patches/p*
$ cvs status | less
$ cvs commit
$ cd ..
$ vi Makefile # add SUBDIRS+=pkgname line
$ cvs commit Makefile
$ cd pkgname
$ make CTYPE=Added commit-changes-entry
```

The commit message of the initial import should include part of the `DESCR` file, so people reading the mailing lists know what the package is/does.

Also mention the new package in `pkgsrc/doc/CHANGES-20xx`.

Previously, “cvs import” was suggested, but it was much easier to get wrong than “cvs add”.

23.6. Updating a package to a newer version

Please always put a concise, appropriate and relevant summary of the changes between old and new versions into the commit log when updating a package. There are various reasons for this:

- A URL is volatile, and can change over time. It may go away completely or its information may be overwritten by newer information.
- Having the change information between old and new versions in our CVS repository is very useful for people who use either cvs or anoncvs.
- Having the change information between old and new versions in our CVS repository is very useful for people who read the `pkgsrc-changes` mailing list, so that they can make tactical decisions about when to upgrade the package.

Please also recognize that, just because a new version of a package has been released, it should not automatically be upgraded in the CVS repository. We prefer to be conservative in the packages that are included in `pkgsrc` - development or beta packages are not really the best thing for most places in which `pkgsrc` is used. Please use your judgement about what should go into `pkgsrc`, and bear in mind that stability is to be preferred above new and possibly untested features.

23.7. Renaming a package in `pkgsrc`

Renaming packages is not recommended.

When renaming packages, be sure to fix any references to the old name in other `Makefiles`, options, `buildlink` files, etc.

Also, when renaming a package, please add the package name and version pattern(s) of the previous package to `SUPERSEDES`. This may be repeated for multiple renames. The new package would be an exact replacement. Example:

```
SUPERSEDES+=      p5-IO-Compress-Zlib<2.017
SUPERSEDES+=      optcomp-[0-9]*
```

Note that “successor” in the `CHANGES-YYYY` file doesn’t necessarily mean that it *supersedes*, as that successor may not be an exact replacement but is a suggestion for the replaced functionality.

23.8. Moving a package in pkgsrc

It is preferred that packages are not renamed or moved, but if needed please follow these steps.

1. Make a copy of the directory somewhere else.
2. Remove all CVS dirs.

Alternatively to the first two steps you can also do:

```
% cvs -d user@cvs.NetBSD.org:/cvsroot export -D today pkgsrc/category/package
and use that for further work.
```

3. Fix `CATEGORIES` and any `DEPENDS` paths that just did “../package” instead of “../category/package”.
4. In the modified package’s Makefile, consider setting `PREV_PKGPATH` to the previous category/package pathname. The `PREV_PKGPATH` can be used by tools for doing an update using pkgsrc building; for example, it can search the `pkg_summary(5)` database for `PREV_PKGPATH` (if no `SUPERSEDES`) and then use the corresponding new `PKGPATH` for that moved package. Note that it may have multiple matches, so the tool should also check on the `PKGBASE` too. The `PREV_PKGPATH` probably has no value unless `SUPERSEDES` is not set, i.e. `PKGBASE` stays the same.
5. **cvs import** the modified package in the new place.
6. Check if any package depends on it:


```
% cd /usr/pkgsrc
% grep /package */*/Makefile* */*/buildlink*
```
7. Fix paths in packages from step 5 to point to new location.
8. **cvs rm (-f)** the package at the old location.
9. Remove from `oldcategory/Makefile`.
10. Add to `newcategory/Makefile`.
11. Commit the changed and removed files:


```
% cvs commit oldcategory/package oldcategory/Makefile newcategory/Makefile
```

 (and any packages from step 5, of course).

Chapter 24.

Frequently Asked Questions

This section contains the answers to questions that may arise when you are writing a package. If you don't find your question answered here, first have a look in the other chapters, and if you still don't have the answer, ask on the `pkgsrc-users` mailing list.

1. What is the difference between `MAKEFLAGS`, `.MAKEFLAGS` and `MAKE_FLAGS`?

`MAKEFLAGS` are the flags passed to the `pkgsrc`-internal invocations of `make(1)`, while `MAKE_FLAGS` are the flags that are passed to the `MAKE_PROGRAM` when building the package. [FIXME: What is `.MAKEFLAGS` for?]

2. What is the difference between `MAKE`, `GMAKE` and `MAKE_PROGRAM`?

`MAKE` is the path to the `make(1)` program that is used in the `pkgsrc` infrastructure. `GMAKE` is the path to GNU Make, but you need to say `USE_TOOLS+=gmake` to use that. `MAKE_PROGRAM` is the path to the Make program that is used for building the package.

3. What is the difference between `CC`, `PKG_CC` and `PKGSRC_COMPILER`?

`CC` is the path to the real C compiler, which can be configured by the `pkgsrc` user. `PKG_CC` is the path to the compiler wrapper. `PKGSRC_COMPILER` is *not* a path to a compiler, but the type of compiler that should be used. See `mk/compiler.mk` for more information about the latter variable.

4. What is the difference between `BUILDLINK_LDFLAGS`, `BUILDLINK_LDADD` and `BUILDLINK_LIBS`? [FIXME]

5. Why does `make show-var VARNAME=BUILDLINK_PREFIX.foo` say it's empty?

For optimization reasons, some variables are only available in the “wrapper” phase and later. To “simulate” the wrapper phase, append `PKG_PHASE=wrapper` to the above command.

6. What does `${MASTER_SITE_SOURCEFORGE:=package/}` mean? I don't understand the `:=` inside it.

The `:=` is not really an assignment operator, although it looks like it. Instead, it is a degenerate form of `${LIST:old_string=new_string}`, which is documented in the `make(1)` man page and which is commonly used in the form `${SRCS:.c=.o}`. In the case of `MASTER_SITE_*`, `old_string` is the empty string and `new_string` is `package/`. That's where the `:` and the `=` fall together.

7. Which mailing lists are there for package developers?

tech-pkg (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#tech-pkg>)

This is a list for technical discussions related to `pkgsrc` development, e.g. soliciting feedback for changes to `pkgsrc` infrastructure, proposed new features, questions related to porting `pkgsrc` to a

new platform, advice for maintaining a package, patches that affect many packages, help requests moved from pkgsrc-users when an infrastructure bug is found, etc.

pkgsrc-bugs (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#pkgsrc-bugs>)

All bug reports in category "pkg" sent with send-pr(1) appear here. Please do not report your bugs here directly; use one of the other mailing lists.

8. Where is the pkgsrc documentation?

There are many places where you can find documentation about pkgsrc:

- The pkgsrc guide (this document) is a collection of chapters that explain large parts of pkgsrc, but some chapters tend to be outdated. Which ones they are is hard to say.
- On the mailing list archives (see <https://mail-index.NetBSD.org/>), you can find discussions about certain features, announcements of new parts of the pkgsrc infrastructure and sometimes even announcements that a certain feature has been marked as obsolete. The benefit here is that each message has a date appended to it.
- Many of the files in the `mk/` directory start with a comment that describes the purpose of the file and how it can be used by the pkgsrc user and package authors. An easy way to find this documentation is to run **bmake help**.
- The CVS log messages are a rich source of information, but they tend to be highly abbreviated, especially for actions that occur often. Some contain a detailed description of what has changed, but they are geared towards the other pkgsrc developers, not towards an average pkgsrc user. They also only document *changes*, so if you don't know what has been before, these messages may not be worth too much to you.
- Some parts of pkgsrc are only "implicitly documented", that is the documentation exists only in the mind of the developer who wrote the code. To get this information, use the **cvs annotate** command to see who has written it and ask on the `tech-pkg` mailing list, so that others can find your questions later (see above). To be sure that the developer in charge reads the mail, you may CC him or her.

9. I have a little time to kill. What shall I do?

This is not really an FAQ yet, but here's the answer anyway.

- Run **pkg_chk -N** (from the `pkgtools/pkg_chk` package). It will tell you about newer versions of installed packages that are available, but not yet updated in pkgsrc.
- Browse `pkgsrc/doc/TODO` — it contains a list of suggested new packages and a list of cleanups and enhancements for pkgsrc that would be nice to have.
- Review packages for which review was requested on the `tech-pkg` (<https://www.NetBSD.org/maillinglists/index.html#tech-pkg>) mailing list.

III. The pkgsrc infrastructure internals

This part of the guide deals with everything from the infrastructure that is behind the interfaces described in the developer's guide. A casual package maintainer should not need anything from this part.

Chapter 25.

Design of the pkgsrc infrastructure

The pkgsrc infrastructure consists of many small Makefile fragments. Each such fragment needs a properly specified interface. This chapter explains how such an interface looks like.

25.1. The meaning of variable definitions

Whenever a variable is defined in the pkgsrc infrastructure, the location and the way of definition provide much information about the intended use of that variable. Additionally, more documentation may be found in a header comment or in this pkgsrc guide.

A special file is `mk/defaults/mk.conf`, which lists all variables that are intended to be user-defined. They are either defined using the `?=` operator or they are left undefined because defining them to anything would effectively mean “yes”. All these variables may be overridden by the pkgsrc user in the `MAKECONF` file.

Outside this file, the following conventions apply: Variables that are defined using the `?=` operator may be overridden by a package.

Variables that are defined using the `=` operator may be used read-only at run-time.

Variables whose name starts with an underscore must not be accessed outside the pkgsrc infrastructure at all. They may change without further notice.

Note: These conventions are currently not applied consistently to the complete pkgsrc infrastructure.

25.2. Avoiding problems before they arise

All variables that contain lists of things should default to being empty. Two examples that do not follow this rule are `USE_LANGUAGES` and `DISTFILES`. These variables cannot simply be modified using the `+=` operator in package Makefiles (or other files included by them), since there is no guarantee whether the variable is already set or not, and what its value is. In the case of `DISTFILES`, the packages “know” the default value and just define it as in the following example.

```
DISTFILES=      ${DISTNAME}${EXTRACT_SUFX} additional-files.tar.gz
```

Because of the selection of this default value, the same value appears in many package Makefiles. Similarly for `USE_LANGUAGES`, but in this case the default value (“c”) is so short that it doesn’t stand out. Nevertheless it is mentioned in many files.

25.3. Variable evaluation

25.3.1. At load time

Variable evaluation takes place either at load time or at runtime, depending on the context in which they occur. The contexts where variables are evaluated at load time are:

- The right hand side of the `:=` and `!=` operators,
- Make directives like `.if` or `.for`,
- Dependency lines.

A special exception are references to the iteration variables of `.for` loops, which are expanded inline, no matter in which context they appear.

As the values of variables may change during load time, care must be taken not to evaluate them by accident. Typical examples for variables that should not be evaluated at load time are `DEPENDS` and `CONFIGURE_ARGS`. To make the effect more clear, here is an example:

```
CONFIGURE_ARGS=      # none
CFLAGS=              -O
CONFIGURE_ARGS+=      CFLAGS=${CFLAGS:Q}

CONFIGURE_ARGS:=      ${CONFIGURE_ARGS}

CFLAGS+=              -Wall
```

This code shows how the use of the `:=` operator can quickly lead to unexpected results. The first paragraph is fairly common code. The second paragraph evaluates the `CONFIGURE_ARGS` variable, which results in `CFLAGS=-O`. In the third paragraph, the `-Wall` is appended to the `CFLAGS`, but this addition will not appear in `CONFIGURE_ARGS`. In actual code, the three paragraphs from above typically occur in completely unrelated files.

25.3.2. At runtime

After all the files have been loaded, the values of the variables cannot be changed anymore. Variables that are used in the shell commands are expanded at this point.

25.4. How can variables be specified?

There are many ways in which the definition and use of a variable can be restricted in order to detect bugs and violations of the (mostly unwritten) policies. A package can be checked with `pkglint -Wall` to see whether it meets these rules.

25.5. Designing interfaces for Makefile fragments

Most of the `.mk` files fall into one of the following classes. Cases where a file falls into more than one class should be avoided as it often leads to subtle bugs.

25.5.1. Procedures with parameters

In a traditional imperative programming language some of the `.mk` files could be described as procedures. They take some input parameters and—after inclusion—provide a result in output parameters. Since all variables in `Makefiles` have global scope care must be taken not to use parameter names that have already another meaning. For example, `PKGNAME` is a bad choice for a parameter name.

Procedures are completely evaluated at preprocessing time. That is, when calling a procedure all input parameters must be completely resolvable. For example, `CONFIGURE_ARGS` should never be an input parameter since it is very likely that further text will be added after calling the procedure, which would effectively apply the procedure to only a part of the variable. Also, references to other variables will be modified after calling the procedure.

A procedure can declare its output parameters either as suitable for use in preprocessing directives or as only available at runtime. The latter alternative is for variables that contain references to other runtime variables.

Procedures shall be written such that it is possible to call the procedure more than once. That is, the file must not contain multiple-inclusion guards.

Examples for procedures are `mk/bsd.options.mk` and `mk/buildlink3/bsd.builtin.mk`. To express that the parameters are evaluated at load time, they should be assigned using the `:=` operator, which should be used only for this purpose.

25.5.2. Actions taken on behalf of parameters

Action files take some input parameters and may define runtime variables. They shall not define loadtime variables. There are action files that are included implicitly by the pkgsrc infrastructure, while other must be included explicitly.

An example for action files is `mk/subst.mk`.

25.6. The order in which files are loaded

Package `Makefiles` usually consist of a set of variable definitions, and include the file `../../../../mk/bsd.pkg.mk` in the very last line. Before that, they may also include various other `*.mk` files if they need to query the availability of certain features like the type of compiler or the X11

implementation. Due to the heavy use of preprocessor directives like `.if` and `.for`, the order in which the files are loaded matters.

This section describes at which point the various files are loaded and gives reasons for that order.

25.6.1. The order in `bsd.prefs.mk`

The very first action in `bsd.prefs.mk` is to define some essential variables like `OPSYS`, `OS_VERSION` and `MACHINE_ARCH`.

Then, the user settings are loaded from the file specified in `MAKECONF`, which is usually `mk.conf`. After that, those variables that have not been overridden by the user are loaded from `mk/defaults/mk.conf`.

After the user settings, the system settings and platform settings are loaded, which may override the user settings.

Then, the tool definitions are loaded. The tool wrappers are not yet in effect. This only happens when building a package, so the proper variables must be used instead of the direct tool names.

As the last steps, some essential variables from the wrapper and the package system flavor are loaded, as well as the variables that have been cached in earlier phases of a package build.

25.6.2. The order in `bsd.pkg.mk`

First, `bsd.prefs.mk` is loaded.

Then, the various `*-vars.mk` files are loaded, which fill default values for those variables that have not been defined by the package. These variables may later be used even in unrelated files.

Then, the file `bsd.pkg.error.mk` provides the target `error-check` that is added as a special dependency to all other targets that use `DELAYED_ERROR_MSG` or `DELAYED_WARNING_MSG`.

Then, the package-specific hacks from `hacks.mk` are included.

Then, various other files follow. Most of them don't have any dependencies on what they need to have included before or after them, though some do.

The code to check `PKG_FAIL_REASON` and `PKG_SKIP_REASON` is then executed, which restricts the use of these variables to all the files that have been included before. Appearances in later files will be silently ignored.

Then, the files for the main targets are included, in the order of later execution, though the actual order should not matter.

At last, some more files are included that don't set any interesting variables but rather just define make targets to be executed.

Chapter 26.

Regression tests

The pkgsrc infrastructure consists of a large codebase, and there are many corners where every little bit of a file is well thought out, making pkgsrc likely to fail as soon as anything is changed near those parts. To prevent most changes from breaking anything, a suite of regression tests should go along with every important part of the pkgsrc infrastructure. This chapter describes how regression tests work in pkgsrc and how you can add new tests.

26.1. Running the regression tests

You first need to install the `pkgtools/pkg_regress` package, which provides the **pkg_regress** command. Then you can simply run that command, which will run all tests in the `regress/` directory.

26.2. Adding a new regression test

Every directory in the `regress/` directory that contains a file called `spec` is considered a regression test. This file is a shell program that is included by the **pkg_regress** command. The following functions can be overridden to suit your needs.

26.2.1. Overridable functions

These functions do not take any parameters. Although they are called in “set -e” mode, they don’t stop at the first failing command. See this Stack Overflow question (<https://stackoverflow.com/q/4072984>) for details.

`do_setup`

This function prepares the environment for the test. By default it does nothing.

`do_test`

This function runs the actual test. By default, it calls `TEST_MAKE` with the arguments `MAKEARGS_TEST` and writes its output including error messages into the file `TEST_OUTFILE`.

When defining this function, make sure that all output that needs to be checked is written to the correct output file. Example:

```
do_test() {  
    echo "Example output"  
} 1>$TEST_OUTFILE 2>&1
```

`check_result`

This function is run after the test and is typically used to compare the actual output from the one that is expected. It can make use of the various helper functions from the next section. Example:

```
check_result() {
    exit_status 0
    output_require "Example"
    output_require "^[:alpha:][:space:][:alpha:]{6}$"
    output_prohibit "no such file or directory"
    regress_fail "expected $expected but got $actual for input $input"
}
```

`do_cleanup`

This function cleans everything up after the test has been run. By default it does nothing.

26.2.2. Helper functions

`regress_fail message...`

This function makes the test fail with the given error message.

`exit_status expected`

This function compares the exitcode of the **do_test** function with its first parameter. If they differ, the test will fail.

`output_require regex...`

This function checks for each of its parameters if the output from **do_test** matches the extended regular expression. If it does not, the test will fail. Example:

```
output_require "looks fine"
output_require "^[:alpha:][:space:][:alpha:]{6}$"
```

`output_prohibit regex...`

This function checks for each of its parameters if the output from **do_test()** does *not* match the extended regular expression. If any of the regular expressions matches, the test will fail.

Chapter 27.

Porting pkgsrc

The pkgsrc system has already been ported to many operating systems, hardware architectures and compilers. This chapter explains the necessary steps to make pkgsrc even more portable.

27.1. Porting pkgsrc to a new operating system

To port pkgsrc to a new operating system (called `MyOS` in this example), you need to touch the following files:

`pkgtools/bootstrap-mk-files/files/mods/MyOS.sys.mk`

This file contains some basic definitions, for example the name of the C compiler.

`mk/bsd.prefs.mk`

Insert code that defines the variables `OPSYS`, `OS_VERSION`, `OPSYS_VERSION`, `LOWER_VENDOR`, `MACHINE_ARCH`, `OBJECT_FMT`, `APPEND_ELF`, and the other variables that appear in this file.

`mk/platform/MyOS.mk`

This file contains the platform-specific definitions that are used by pkgsrc. Start by copying one of the other files and edit it to your needs.

`mk/tools/tools.MyOS.mk`

This file defines the paths to all the tools that are needed by one or the other package in pkgsrc, as well as by pkgsrc itself. Find out where these tools are on your platform and add them.

Now, you should be able to build some basic packages, like `lang/perl5`, `shells/bash`.

Appendix A.

A simple example package: bison

We checked to find a piece of software that wasn't in the packages collection, and picked GNU bison. Quite why someone would want to have **bison** when Berkeley **yacc** is already present in the tree is beyond us, but it's useful for the purposes of this exercise.

A.1. files

A.1.1. Makefile

```
# $NetBSD$
#

DISTNAME=      bison-1.25
CATEGORIES=    devel
MASTER_SITES=  ${MASTER_SITE_GNU:=bison/}

MAINTAINER=    pkgsrc-users@NetBSD.org
HOMEPAGE=      https://www.gnu.org/software/bison/bison.html
COMMENT=       GNU yacc clone

GNU_CONFIGURE= yes
INFO_FILES=    yes

.include "../../mk/bsd.pkg.mk"
```

A.1.2. DESCR

GNU version of yacc. Can make re-entrant parsers, and numerous other improvements. Why you would want this when Berkeley yacc(1) is part of the NetBSD source tree is beyond me.

A.1.3. PLIST

```
@comment $NetBSD$
bin/bison
man/man1/bison.1.gz
```

```
share/bison.simple
share/bison.hairy
```

A.1.4. Checking a package with pkglint

The NetBSD package system comes with `pkgtools/pkglint` which helps to check the contents of these files. After installation it is quite easy to use, just change to the directory of the package you wish to examine and run **pkglint**:

```
$ pkglint
ERROR: Makefile: Each package must define its LICENSE.
WARN: Makefile:9: HOMEPAGE should migrate from http to https.
NOTE: PLIST:3: The .gz extension is unnecessary for manual pages.
WARN: PLIST:5: "share/bison.hairy" should be sorted before "share/bison.simple".
1 error, 2 warnings and 1 note found.
(Run "pkglint -e" to show explanations.)
(Run "pkglint -fs" to show what can be fixed automatically.)
(Run "pkglint -F" to automatically fix some issues.)
```

Depending on the supplied command line arguments (see `pkglint(1)`), more checks will be performed. Use e.g. **pkglint -Wall** for a very thorough check.

A.2. Steps for building, installing, packaging

Create the directory where the package lives, plus any auxiliary directories:

```
# cd /usr/pkgsrc/lang
# mkdir bison
# cd bison
# mkdir patches
```

Create `Makefile`, `DESCR` and `PLIST` (see Chapter 12) then continue with fetching the distfile:

```
# make fetch
>> bison-1.25.tar.gz doesn't seem to exist on this system.
>> Attempting to fetch from ftp://prep.ai.mit.edu/pub/gnu//.
Requesting ftp://prep.ai.mit.edu/pub/gnu//bison-1.25.tar.gz (via ftp://orpheus.amdahl.com:8
ftp: Error retrieving file: 500 Internal error

>> Attempting to fetch from ftp://wuarchive.wustl.edu/systems/gnu//.
Requesting ftp://wuarchive.wustl.edu/systems/gnu//bison-1.25.tar.gz (via ftp://orpheus.amda
ftp: Error retrieving file: 500 Internal error

>> Attempting to fetch from ftp://ftp.freebsd.org/pub/FreeBSD/distfiles//.
Requesting ftp://ftp.freebsd.org/pub/FreeBSD/distfiles//bison-1.25.tar.gz (via ftp://orpheu
Successfully retrieved file.
```

Generate the checksum of the distfile into `distinfo`:

```
# make makedistinfo
```

Now compile:

[illegible]

```
rm -f bison.sl
sed -e "/^#line/ s|bison|usr/pkg/share/bison|" < ./bison.simple > bison.sl
```

Everything seems OK, so install the files:

```
# make install
>> Checksum OK for bison-1.25.tar.gz.
==> Installing for bison-1.25
sh ./mkinstalldirs /usr/pkg/bin /usr/pkg/share /usr/pkg/info /usr/pkg/man/man1
rm -f /usr/pkg/bin/bison
cd /usr/pkg/share; rm -f bison.simple bison.hairy
rm -f /usr/pkg/man/man1/bison.1 /usr/pkg/info/bison.info*
install -c -o bin -g bin -m 555 bison /usr/pkg/bin/bison
/usr/bin/install -c -o bin -g bin -m 644 bison.sl /usr/pkg/share/bison.simple
/usr/bin/install -c -o bin -g bin -m 644 ./bison.hairy /usr/pkg/share/bison.hairy
cd .; for f in bison.info*; do /usr/bin/install -c -o bin -g bin -m 644 $f /usr/pkg/info/$f; done
/usr/bin/install -c -o bin -g bin -m 644 ./bison.1 /usr/pkg/man/man1/bison.1
==> Registering installation for bison-1.25
```

You can now use bison, and also - if you decide so - remove it with **pkg_delete bison**. Should you decide that you want a binary package, do this now:

```
# make package
>> Checksum OK for bison-1.25.tar.gz.
==> Building package for bison-1.25
Creating package bison-1.25.tgz
Registering depends:.
Creating gzip'd tar ball in '/u/pkgsrc/lang/bison/bison-1.25.tgz'
```

Now that you don't need the source and object files any more, clean up:

```
# make clean
==> Cleaning for bison-1.25
```

Appendix B.

Security hardening

A number of mechanisms are available in `pkgsrc` to improve the security of the resulting system. This page describes the mechanisms, and gives hints about detecting and fixing problems.

Mechanisms can be enabled individually in `mk.conf`, and are individually described below.

Typically, a feature will cause some programs to fail to build or work when first enabled. This can be due to latent problems in the program, and can be due to other reasons. After enough testing to have confidence that user problems will be quite rare, individual mechanisms will be enabled by default.

For each mechanism, see the Caveats section below for an explanation of what might go wrong at compile time and at run time, and how to notice and address these problems.

B.1. Mechanisms

B.1.1. Enabled by default

B.1.1.1. `PKGSRC_USE_FORTIFY`

This allows substitute wrappers to be used for some commonly used library functions that do not have built-in bounds checking - but could in some cases.

Two mitigation levels are available:

- "weak" only enables checks at compile-time.
- "strong" enables checks at compile-time and runtime.

"strong" has been enabled by default since `pkgsrc-2017Q3`.

B.1.1.2. `PKGSRC_USE_SSP`

This enables a stack-smashing protection mitigation. It is done by adding a guard variable to functions with vulnerable objects. The guards are initialized when a function is entered and then checked when the function exits. The guard check will fail and the program forcibly exited if the variable was modified in the meantime. This can happen in case of buffer overflows or memory corruption, and therefore exposing these bugs.

Different mitigation levels are available:

- "yes", which will only protect functions considered vulnerable by the compiler;
- "all", which will protect every function;

- "strong", the default, which will apply a better balance between the two settings above.

This mitigation is supported by both GCC and clang. It may be supported in additional compilers, possibly under a different name. It is particularly useful for unsafe programming languages, such as C/C++.

- "yes" is enabled by default where known supported since pkgsrc-2017Q3.
- "strong" is enabled by default where known supported since pkgsrc-2021Q4.

More details can be found here:

- Buffer overflow protection on Wikipedia (https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Buffer_overflow_protection)

B.1.1.3. PKGSRM_MKPIE

This requests the creation of PIE (Position Independent Executables) for all executables. The PIE mechanism is normally used for shared libraries, so that they can be loaded at differing addresses at runtime. PIE itself does not have useful security properties; however, it is necessary to fully leverage some, such as ASLR. Some operating systems support Address Space Layout Randomization (ASLR), which causes different addresses to be used each time a program is run. This makes it more difficult for an attacker to guess addresses and thus makes exploits harder to construct. With PIE, ASLR can really be applied to the entire program, instead of the stack and heap only.

PIE executables will only be built for toolchains that are known to support PIE. Currently, this means NetBSD on x86, ARM, SPARC64, m68k, and MIPS.

PKGSRM_MKPIE was enabled by default after the pkgsrc-2021Q3 branch.

B.1.1.4. PKGSRM_USE_RELRO

This also makes the exploitation of some security vulnerabilities more difficult in some cases.

Two different mitigation levels are available:

- partial (the default): the ELF sections are reordered so that internal data sections precede the program's own data sections, and non-PLT GOT is read-only;
- full: in addition to partial RELRO, every relocation is performed immediately when starting the program, allowing the entire GOT to be read-only. This can greatly slow down startup of large programs.

This is currently supported by GCC. Many software distributions now enable this feature by default, at the "partial" level. However, it cannot yet be enforced globally in pkgsrc through cwrappers.

More details can be found here:

- Hardening ELF binaries using Relocation Read-Only (RELRO) (<https://www.redhat.com/en/blog/hardening-elf-binaries-using-relocation-read-only-relro>)

B.1.2. Not enabled by default

B.1.2.1. PKGSRM_MKREPRO

With this option, pkgsrc will try to build packages reproducibly. This allows packages built from the same tree and with the same options, to produce identical results bit by bit. This option should be combined with ASLR and PKGSRM_MKPIE to avoid predictable address offsets for attackers attempting to exploit security vulnerabilities.

More details can be found here:

- Reproducible Builds - a set of software development practices that create an independently-verifiable path from source to binary code (<https://reproducible-builds.org/>)

More work likely needs to be done before pkgsrc is fully reproducible.

B.1.2.2. PKGSRM_USE_STACK_CHECK

This uses `-fstack-check` with GCC for another stack protection mitigation.

It asks the compiler to generate code verifying that it does not corrupt the stack. According to GCC's manual page, this is really only useful for multi-threaded programs.

B.2. Caveats

B.2.1. Problems with PKGSRM_MKPIE

B.2.1.1. Packages failing to build

A number of packages may fail to build with this option enabled. The failures are often related to the absence of the `-fPIC` compilation flag when building libraries or executables (or ideally `-fPIE` in the latter case). This flag is added to the `CFLAGS` already, but requires the package to actually support it.

B.2.1.1.1. How to fix

These instructions are meant as a reference only; they likely need to be adapted for many packages individually.

For packages using Makefiles:

```
MAKE_FLAGS+= CFLAGS=${CFLAGS:Q}
MAKE_FLAGS+= LDFLAGS=${LDFLAGS:Q}
```

For packages using Imakefiles:

```
MAKE_FLAGS+= CCOPTIONS=${CFLAGS:Q}
MAKE_FLAGS+= LOCAL_LDFLAGS=${LDFLAGS:Q}
```

B.2.1.2. Run-time crashes

Some programs may fail to run, or crash at random times once built as PIE. Two scenarios are essentially possible. This is nearly always due to a bug in the program being exposed due to ASLR.

B.2.1.3. Disabling PKGSRC_MKPIE on a per-package basis

Ideally, packages should be fixed for compatibility with MKPIE. However, in some cases this is very difficult, due to complex build systems, packages using non-standard toolchains, or programming languages with odd bootstrapping mechanisms.

To disable `PKGSRC_MKPIE` on a per-package basis, set `MKPIE_SUPPORTED= no` in the package's Makefile before `bsd.prefs.mk` is included.

B.2.2. Problems with PKGSRC_USE_FORTIFY

B.2.2.1. Packages failing to build

This feature makes use of pre-processing directives to look for hardened, alternative implementations of essential library calls. Some programs may fail to build as a result; this usually happens for those trying too hard to be portable, or otherwise abusing definitions in the standard library.

B.2.2.2. Run-time crashes

This feature may cause some programs to crash, usually indicating an actual bug in the program. The fix will typically involve patching the original program's source code.

B.2.2.3. Optimization is required

At least in the case of GCC, FORTIFY will only be applied if optimization is applied while compiling. This means that the `CFLAGS` should also contain `-O`, `-O2` or another optimization level. This cannot easily be applied globally, as some packages may require specific optimization levels.

B.2.2.4. Disabling FORTIFY on a per-package basis

Note: FORTIFY should not be disabled to work around runtime crashes in the program! This is a very bad idea and will expose you to security vulnerabilities.

To disable FORTIFY on a per-package basis, set the following in the package's Makefile before `bsd.prefs.mk` is included:

```
FORTIFY_SUPPORTED= no
```

B.2.3. Problems with PKGSRV_USE_RELRO

B.2.3.1. Performance impact

For better protection, full RELRO requires every symbol to be resolved when the program starts, rather than simply when required at run-time. This will have more impact on programs using a lot of symbols, or linked to libraries exposing a lot of symbols. Therefore, daemons or programs otherwise running in background are affected only when started. Programs loading plug-ins at run-time are affected when loading the plug-ins.

The impact is not expected to be noticeable on modern hardware, except in some cases for big programs.

B.2.3.2. Run-time crashes

Some programs handle plug-ins and dependencies in a way that conflicts with RELRO: for instance, with an initialization routine listing any other plug-in required. With full RELRO, the missing symbols are resolved before the initialization routine can run, and the dynamic loader will not be able to find them directly and abort as a result. Unfortunately, this is how Xorg loads its drivers. Partial RELRO can be applied instead in this case.

B.2.3.3. Disabling RELRO on a per-package basis

To disable RELRO on a per-package basis, set the following in the package's `Makefile` before `bsd.prefs.mk` is included:

```
RELRO_SUPPORTED= no
```

It is also possible to at most enable partial RELRO, by setting `RELRO_SUPPORTED` to `partial`.

B.2.4. Problems with PKGSRV_USE_SSP

B.2.4.1. Packages failing to build

The stack-smashing protection provided by this option does not work for some programs. The most common situation in which this happens is when the program allocates variables on the stack, with the size determined at run-time.

B.2.4.2. Run-time crashes

Again, this feature may cause some programs to crash via a `SIGABRT`, usually indicating an actual bug in the program.

On NetBSD `LOG_CRIT` level syslog messages are sent and - by default - appended to `/var/log/messages`, e.g.:

```
Jan  6 15:42:51 hostname -: hostname program - - - buffer overflow detected; terminated
```

(where `hostname` is the `hostname(1)` and `program` is the `basename(1)` of the program crashed).

Patching the original program is then required.

Rebuilding the package via:

```
% env CFLAGS=-g INSTALL_UNSTRIPPED=yes make replace
```

and inspecting the backtrace of the core dump via the debugger should point out the problematic call by inspecting the frame calling the `_chk()` (SSP) function.

B.2.4.3. Performance impact

The compiler emits extra code when using this feature: a check for buffer overflows is performed when entering and exiting functions, requiring an extra variable on the stack. The level of protection can otherwise be adjusted to affect only those functions considered more sensitive by the compiler (with `-fstack-protector` instead of `-fstack-protector-all`).

The impact is not expected to be noticeable on modern hardware. However, programs with a hard requirement to run at the fastest possible speed should avoid using this feature, or using libraries built with this feature.

B.2.4.4. Disabling SSP on a per-package basis

Note: SSP should not be disabled to work around runtime crashes in the program! This is a very bad idea and will expose you to security vulnerabilities.

To disable SSP on a per-package basis, set the following in the package's `Makefile` before `bsd.prefs.mk` is included:

```
SSP_SUPPORTED= no
```

B.3. Auditing the system

The illusion of security is worse than having no security at all. This section lists a number of ways to ensure the security features requested are actually effective.

These instructions were obtained and tested on a system derived from NetBSD 7 (amd64). YMMV.

B.3.1. Checking for PIE

The ELF executable type in use changes for binaries built as PIE; without:

```
$ file /path/to/bin/ary
```

```
/path/to/bin/ary: ELF 64-bit LSB executable, x86-64, version 1 (SYSV), dynamically linked (
```

as opposed to the following binary, built as PIE:

```
$ file /path/to/pie/bin/ary
```

```
/path/to/pie/bin/ary: ELF 64-bit LSB shared object, x86-64, version 1 (SYSV), dynamically l
```

The latter result is then what is expected.

B.3.2. Checking for partial RELRO

The following command should list a section called RELRO:

```
$ objdump -p /path/to/bin/ary
```

```
/path/to/bin/ary:      file format elf64-x86-64
```

```
Program Header:
```

```
[...]
```

```
RELRO off      0x0000000000000d78 vaddr 0x0000000000600d78 paddr 0x0000000000600d78 align
```

This check is now performed automatically if `PKG_DEVELOPER` is set and RELRO is enabled.

B.3.3. Checking for full RELRO

The dynamic loader will apply RELRO immediately when detecting the presence of the `BIND_NOW` flag:

```
$ objdump -x /path/to/bin/ary
```

```
/path/to/bin/ary:      file format elf64-x86-64
```

```
Dynamic Section:
```

```
[...]
```

```
BIND_NOW      0x0000000000000000
```

This has to be combined with partial RELRO (see above) to be fully efficient.

This check is now performed automatically (where supported) if `PKG_DEVELOPER` is set.

B.3.4. Checking for SSP

Note: Checking for SSP using this method only works where the operating system uses `libssp`.
`libssp` is not used on recent NetBSD/FreeBSD/Linux versions.

Building objects, binaries and libraries with SSP will affect the presence of additional symbols in the resulting file:

```
$ nm /path/to/bin/ary
```

```
[...]
```

```
U __stack_chk_fail
```

```
0000000000600ea0 B __stack_chk_guard
```

This is an indicator that the program was indeed built with support for SSP.

This check is now performed automatically (where supported) if `PKG_DEVELOPER` is set and SSP is enabled.

Appendix C.

Build logs

C.1. Building figlet

```
# make
==> Checking for vulnerabilities in figlet-2.2.1nb2
=> figlet221.tar.gz doesn't seem to exist on this system.
=> Attempting to fetch figlet221.tar.gz from ftp://ftp.figlet.org/pub/figlet/program/unix/.
=> [172219 bytes]
Connected to ftp.plig.net.
220 ftp.plig.org NcFTPd Server (licensed copy) ready.
331 Guest login ok, send your complete e-mail address as password.
230-You are user #5 of 500 simultaneous users allowed.
230-
230-  _ _ _
230- | _ | | _ _ _ _ _ | | _ _ _ _ _
230- | _ | | . | _ | . | | | . | _ | . |
230- | _ | | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ |
230-      | _ | | _ | | _ | | _ |
230-
230-*** Welcome to ftp.plig.org ***
230-
230-Please note that all transfers from this FTP site are logged. If you
230-do not like this, please disconnect now.
230-
230-This archive is available via
230-
230-HTTP:  http://ftp.plig.org/
230-FTP:   ftp://ftp.plig.org/      (max 500 connections)
230-RSYNC: rsync://ftp.plig.org/   (max 30 connections)
230-
230-Please email comments, bug reports and requests for packages to be
230-mirrored to ftp-admin@plig.org.
230-
230-
230 Logged in anonymously.
Remote system type is UNIX.
Using binary mode to transfer files.
200 Type okay.
250 "/"pub" is new cwd.
250-"/pub/figlet" is new cwd.
250-
250-Welcome to the figlet archive at ftp.figlet.org
250-
250- ftp://ftp.figlet.org/pub/figlet/
```

```

250-
250-The official FIGlet web page is:
250- http://www.figlet.org/
250-
250-If you have questions, please mailto:info@figlet.org. If you want to
250-contribute a font or something else, you can email us.
250
250 "/pub/figlet/program" is new cwd.
250 "/pub/figlet/program/unix" is new cwd.
local: figlet221.tar.gz remote: figlet221.tar.gz
502 Unimplemented command.
227 Entering Passive Mode (195,40,6,41,246,104)
150 Data connection accepted from 84.128.86.72:65131; transfer starting for figlet221.tar.g
38% |*****          | 65800      64.16 KB/s    00:01 ETA
226 Transfer completed.
172219 bytes received in 00:02 (75.99 KB/s)
221 Goodbye.
=> Checksum OK for figlet221.tar.gz.
==> Extracting for figlet-2.2.1nb2
==> Required installed package ccache-[0-9]*: ccache-2.3nb1 found
==> Patching for figlet-2.2.1nb2
==> Applying pkgsrc patches for figlet-2.2.1nb2
==> Overriding tools for figlet-2.2.1nb2
==> Creating toolchain wrappers for figlet-2.2.1nb2
==> Configuring for figlet-2.2.1nb2
==> Building for figlet-2.2.1nb2
gcc -O2 -DDEFAULTFONTDIR=\"/usr/pkg/share/figlet\" -DDEFAULTFONTFILE=\"/standard.flf\"  fig
chmod a+x figlet
gcc -O2 -o chkfont chkfont.c
=> Unwrapping files-to-be-installed.
#
# make install
==> Checking for vulnerabilities in figlet-2.2.1nb2
==> Installing for figlet-2.2.1nb2
install -d -o root -g wheel -m 755 /usr/pkg/bin
install -d -o root -g wheel -m 755 /usr/pkg/man/man6
mkdir -p /usr/pkg/share/figlet
cp figlet /usr/pkg/bin
cp chkfont /usr/pkg/bin
chmod 555 figlist showfigfonts
cp figlist /usr/pkg/bin
cp showfigfonts /usr/pkg/bin
cp fonts/*.flf /usr/pkg/share/figlet
cp fonts/*.flc /usr/pkg/share/figlet
cp figlet.6 /usr/pkg/man/man6
==> Registering installation for figlet-2.2.1nb2
#

```

C.2. Packaging figlet

```
# make package
==> Checking for vulnerabilities in figlet-2.2.1nb2
==> Packaging figlet-2.2.1nb2
==> Building binary package for figlet-2.2.1nb2
Creating package /home/cvs/pkgsrc/packages/i386/All/figlet-2.2.1nb2.tgz
Using SrcDir value of /usr/pkg
Registering depends:.
#
```

Appendix D.

Directory layout of the pkgsrc FTP server

As in other big projects, the directory layout of pkgsrc is quite complex for newbies. This chapter explains where you find things on the FTP server. The base directory on `ftp.NetBSD.org` is `/pub/pkgsrc/` (`ftp://ftp.NetBSD.org/pub/pkgsrc/`). On other servers it may be different, but inside this directory, everything should look the same, no matter on which server you are. This directory contains some subdirectories, which are explained below.

D.1. `distfiles`: The distributed source files

The directory `distfiles` contains lots of archive files from all pkgsrc packages, which are mirrored here. The subdirectories are called after their package names and are used when the distributed files have names that don't explicitly contain a version number or are otherwise too generic (for example `release.tar.gz`).

D.2. `misc`: Miscellaneous things

This directory contains things that individual pkgsrc developers find worth publishing.

D.3. `packages`: Binary packages

This directory contains binary packages for the various platforms that are supported by pkgsrc. Each subdirectory is of the form `OPSYS/ARCH/OSVERSION_TAG`. The meaning of these variables is:

- `OPSYS` is the name of the operating system for which the packages have been built. The name is taken from the output of the `uname` command, so it may differ from the one you are used to hear.
- `ARCH` is the hardware architecture of the platform for which the packages have been built. It also includes the ABI (Application Binary Interface) for platforms that have several of them.
- `OSVERSION` is the version of the operating system. For version numbers that change often (for example NetBSD-current), the often-changing part should be replaced with an `x`, for example `4.99.x`.
- `TAG` is either `20xxQY` for a stable branch, or `head` for packages built from the HEAD branch. The latter should only be used when the packages are updated on a regular basis. Otherwise the date from checking out pkgsrc should be appended, for example `head_20071015`.

The rationale for exactly this scheme is that the pkgsrc users looking for binary packages can quickly click through the directories on the server and find the best binary packages for their machines. Since they usually know the operating system and the hardware architecture, OPSYS and ARCH are placed first. After these choices, they can select the best combination of OSVERSION and TAG together, since it is usually the case that packages stay compatible between different version of the operating system.

In each of these directories, there is a whole binary packages collection for a specific platform. It has a directory called `All` which contains all binary packages. Besides that, there are various category directories that contain symbolic links to the real binary packages.

D.4. reports: Bulk build reports

Here are the reports from bulk builds, for those who want to fix packages that didn't build on some of the platforms. The structure of subdirectories should look like the one in Section D.3.

D.5. current, stable, pkgsrc-20xxQy: source packages

These directories contain the “real” pkgsrc, that is the files that define how to create binary packages from source archives.

Each of the `current`, `stable` and `pkgsrc-20xxQy` directories share the same structure. They each contain a `pkgsrc` directory and `pkgsrc.tar.{bz,gz,xz}` file.

The directory `pkgsrc` contains a snapshot of the CVS repository, which is updated regularly. The file `pkgsrc.tar.{bz,gz,xz}` contains the same as the directory, ready to be downloaded as a whole.

The `current` directory contains files related to the HEAD branch of the CVS repository. In this directory there is an additional file called `pkgsrc-readmes.tar.{bz,gz,xz}` that contains all pkgsrc READMEs with information about categories and packages.

The `stable` directory is a symlink to the latest `pkgsrc-20xxQy`.

The `pkgsrc-20xxQy` directories contain files related to the `-20xxQy` stable branch of the CVS repository. In these directories there is an additional file called `pkgsrc-20xxQy.tar.{bz,gz,xz}`, which contains the state of pkgsrc when it was branched.

Appendix E.

Help topics

The following list contains all help topics that are available when running **bmake help topic=:index**.

#!	-lintl
32bit	64bit
ABI	ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES
ACROREAD_FONTPATH	ADDITIONAL
AFAIK	AIX
ALLOW_VULNERABLE_PACKAGES	ALL_ENV
ALSA_PC	ALTERNATIVES_SRC
AMANDA_TMP	AMANDA_USER
AMANDA_VAR	APACHE_GROUP
APACHE_MODULE_NAME	APACHE_MODULE_SRC
APACHE_MODULE_SRCDIR	APACHE_PKG_PREFIX
APACHE_SUEXEC_CONFIGURE_ARGS	APACHE_SUEXEC_DOCROOT
APACHE_USER	APPEND_ABI
APPEND_ELF	ARLA_CACHE
AUDIT_PACKAGES_FLAGS	AUTOCONF_REQD
AUTOMAKE_OVERRIDE	AUTOMAKE_REQD
AUTO_MKDIRS	BDB185_DEFAULT
BDBBASE	BDB_ACCEPTED
BDB_DEFAULT	BDB_LIBS
BDB_TYPE	BINCIMAP_GROUP
BINCIMAP_USER	BIND_DIR
BIND_GROUP	BIND_USER
BINOWN	BINPKG_SITES
BIN_INSTALL_FLAGS	BISON_PKGDATADIR
BLAS	BLAS_ACCEPTED
BLAS_C_INTERFACE	BLAS_INCLUDES
BLAS_INDEX64	BLAS_LIBS
BLAS_TYPE	BOOTSTRAP_DEPENDS
BROKEN	BROKEN_EXCEPT_ON_PLATFORM
BROKEN_ON_PLATFORM	BSDSRCDIR
BSDXSRCDIR	BSD_MAKE_ENV
BUILDLINK_AUTO_DIRS	BUILDLINK_AUTO_VARS
BUILDLINK_CFLAGS	BUILDLINK_CONTENTS_FILTER
BUILDLINK_CPPFLAGS	BUILDLINK_DEPMETHOD
BUILDLINK_FILES	BUILDLINK_FILES_CMD
BUILDLINK_FNAME_TRANSFORM	BUILDLINK_LDFLAGS
BUILDLINK_LIBS	BUILDLINK_OPYSYS_SUPPORT_PTHREAD
BUILDLINK_PKGNAME	BUILDLINK_PREFIX
BUILDLINK_RPATHDIRS	BUILDLINK_TREE
BUILD_DEFS	BUILD_DEFS_EFFECTS
BUILD_DEPENDS	BUILD_DIRS
BUILD_ENV_SHELL	BUILD_MAKE_CMD
BUILD_MAKE_FLAGS	BUILD_TARGET
BUILTIN_FIND_FILES	BUILTIN_FIND_FILES_VAR
BUILTIN_FIND_GREP	BUILTIN_FIND_HEADERS
BUILTIN_FIND_HEADERS_VAR	BUILTIN_FIND_PKGCONFIG
BUILTIN_FIND_PKGCONFIG_VAR	BUILTIN_PKG
BUILTIN_TEST_CURSES_DEFINES	BUILTIN_TEST_CURSES_FUNCS

BUILTIN_VERSION_SCRIPT	BUILTIN_X11_TYPE
BUILTIN_X11_VERSION	CACTI_GROUP
CACTI_USER	CANNA_GROUP
CANNA_USER	CAT
CBLAS_LIBS	CCACHE_BASE
CCACHE_DIR	CCACHE_LOGFILE
CC_VERSION	CC_VERSION_STRING
CDRECORD_CONF	CDROM_PKG_URL_DIR
CDROM_PKG_URL_HOST	CHECKOUT_DATE
CHECK_COMPILER	CHECK_FAKEHOME
CHECK_FILES	CHECK_FILES_SKIP
CHECK_FILES_STRICT	CHECK_HEADERS
CHECK_HEADERS_SKIP	CHECK_INTERPRETER
CHECK_INTERPRETER_SKIP	CHECK_PERMS
CHECK_PERMS_AUTOFIX	CHECK_PERMS_SKIP
CHECK_PIE	CHECK_PIE_SKIP
CHECK_PIE_SUPPORTED	CHECK_PORTABILITY
CHECK_PORTABILITY_EXPERIMENTAL	CHECK_PORTABILITY_SKIP
CHECK_RELRO	CHECK_RELRO_SKIP
CHECK_RELRO_SUPPORTED	CHECK_SHLIBS
CHECK_SHLIBS_SKIP	CHECK_SHLIBS_SUPPORTED
CHECK_SHLIBS_TOXIC	CHECK_SSP
CHECK_SSP_SKIP	CHECK_SSP_SUPPORTED
CHECK_STRIPPED	CHECK_STRIPPED_SKIP
CHECK_WRKREF	CHECK_WRKREF_EXTRA_DIRS
CHECK_WRKREF_SKIP	CLAMAV_DBDIR
CLAMAV_GROUP	CLAMAV_USER
CLANGBASE	CLEANDEPENDS
CMAKE_DEPENDENCIES_REWRITE	CMAKE_INSTALL_NAME_DIR
CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX	CMAKE_MODULE_PATH_OVERRIDE
CMAKE_PKGSRC_BUILD_FLAGS	CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH
CMAKE_USE_GNU_INSTALL_DIRS	COMMON_LISP_DOCFILES
COMMON_LISP_EXAMPLES	COMMON_LISP_EXTRAFILES
COMMON_LISP_PACKAGES	COMMON_LISP_SYSTEM
COMPILER_RPATH_FLAG	COMPILER_USE_SYMLINKS
CONFIGURE_ARGS	CONFIGURE_DIRS
CONFIGURE_ENV	CONFIGURE_ENV_SHELL
CONFIGURE_HAS_INFODIR	CONFIGURE_HAS_MANDIR
CONFIGURE_SCRIPT	CONFIG_SHELL
CONFIG_SHELL_FLAGS	CONF_FILES
CONF_FILES_MODE	CONF_FILES_PERMS
CONSERVER_DEFAULTHOST	CONSERVER_DEFAULTPORT
CP	CPP
CPP_PRECOMP_FLAGS	CREATE_WRKDIR_SYMLINK
CROSSBASE	CTFCONVERT
CTF_FILES_SKIP	CTF_SUPPORTED
CTYPE	CUPS_GROUP
CUPS_SYSTEM_GROUPS	CUPS_USER
CURSES_DEFAULT	CURSES_TYPE
CVS_EXTRACTDIR	CVS_MODULE
CVS_PROJECT	CVS_REPOSITORIES
CVS_ROOT	CVS_ROOT_GNU
CVS_ROOT_NONGNU	CVS_ROOT_SOURCEFORGE
CVS_TAG	CXX
CYRUS_GROUP	CYRUS_IDLE
CYRUS_USER	DAEMONTOOLS_GROUP
DAEMONTOOLS_LOG_USER	DARWIN_NO_SYSTEM_LIBS
DARWIN_REQUIRES_FILTER	DBUS_GROUP
DBUS_USER	DEFANG_GROUP
DEFANG_USER	DEFAULT_ACCEPTABLE_LICENSES
DEFAULT_DISTFILES	DEFAULT_IRC_SERVER

DEFAULT_SERIAL_DEVICE	DEF_UMASK
DEINSTALLDEPENDS	DEINSTALL_SRC
DEINSTALL_TEMPLATES	DELAYED_ERROR_MSG
DELAYED_WARNING_MSG	DEPENDS
DEPENDS_TARGET	DEPENDS_TYPE
DESTDIR	DESTDIR_VARNAME
DIALER_GROUP	DIGEST_REQD
DISTDIR	DISTFILES
DISTINFO_FILE	DISTNAME
DIST_PATH	DIST_SUBDIR
DJBDNS_AXFR_USER	DJBDNS_CACHE_USER
DJBDNS_DJBDNS_GROUP	DJBDNS_LOG_USER
DJBDNS_RBL_USER	DJBDNS_TINY_USER
DLOPEN_REQUIRE_PTHREADS	DL_AUTO_VARS
DL_CFLAGS	DL_LDFLAGS
DL_LIBS	DNS
DOCOWN	DOWNLOADED_DISTFILE
DQCACHE_GROUP	DQCACHE_USER
DT_LAYOUT	DYNAMIC_SITES_CMD
DYNAMIC_SITES_SCRIPT	ECHO
ECHO_N	ELK_GUI
EMACS_TYPE	EMULDIR
EMULSUBDIR	EMULSUBDIRSLASH
EMUL_ARCH	EMUL_DISTRO
EMUL_EXEC_FMT	EMUL_IS_NATIVE
EMUL_MODULES	EMUL_OPSYS
EMUL_PKG_FMT	EMUL_PLATFORM
EMUL_PLATFORMS	EMUL_PREFER
EMUL_REQD	EMUL_TYPE
ERROR_MSG	EXIM_GROUP
EXIM_USER	EXPORT_SYMBOLS_LDFLAGS
EXTRACTOR	EXTRACT_CMD
EXTRACT_CMD_DEFAULT	EXTRACT_DIR
EXTRACT_ELEMENTS	EXTRACT_ENV
EXTRACT_ONLY	EXTRACT_OPTS
EXTRACT_SUFX	EXTRACT_USING
FAIL	FAILOVER_FETCH
FAIL_MSG	FAKE_NCURSES
FAM	FAM_ACCEPTED
FAM_DEFAULT	FAM_SERVER
FCPATH	FEATURE_CPPFLAGS
FEATURE_LDFLAGS	FEATURE_LIBS
FETCH_AFTER_ARGS	FETCH_BEFORE_ARGS
FETCH_CMD	FETCH_OUTPUT_ARGS
FETCH_PROXY	FETCH_RESUME_ARGS
FETCH_TIMEOUT	FETCH_USE_IPV4_ONLY
FETCH_USING	FILES_SUBST
FILES_SUBST_SED	FIX_SYSTEM_HEADERS
FONTDIR	FONT_DIRS
FONT_VERBOSE	FOO_HACKS_MK
FOSSIL_EXTRACTDIR	FOSSIL_REPO
FOSSIL_REPOSITORIES	FOSSIL_VERSION
FOX_USE_XUNICODE	FREEWNN_GROUP
FREEWNN_USER	FTP_PKG_URL_DIR
FTP_PKG_URL_HOST	GAMEDATAMODE
GAMEDATA_PERMS	GAMEDIRMODE
GAMEDIR_PERMS	GAMEGRP
GAMEMODE	GAMEOWN
GAMES_GROUP	GAMES_USER
GCC	GCCBASE
GCC_REQD	GCC_VERSION_SUFFIX

GEM_BUILD	GEM_CLEANBUILD
GEM_CLEANBUILD_EXTENSIONS	GEM_DOCDIR
GEM_EXTSDIR	GEM_HOME
GEM_KEEPCBUILD	GEM_LIBDIR
GEM_NAME	GEM_PATH
GEM_PLUGINSDIR	GEM_SPECFILE
GENERATE_PLIST	GHC
GHOSTSCRIPT_REQD	GITHUB_PROJECT
GITHUB_RELEASE	GITHUB_SUBMODULES
GITHUB_TAG	GITHUB_TYPE
GITLAB_PROJECT	GITLAB_TAG
GITLAB_TYPE	GIT_BRANCH
GIT_ENV	GIT_EXTRACTDIR
GIT_REPO	GIT_REPOSITORIES
GIT_REVISION	GIT_TAG
GNU	GNU_CONFIGURE
GNU_CONFIGURE_INFODIR	GNU_CONFIGURE_MANDIR
GNU_CONFIGURE_QUIET	GNU_CONFIGURE_STRICT
GODEP_REDIRECTS	GO_BUILD_PATTERN
GO_DEPS	GO_DIST_BASE
GO_EXTRA_MOD_DIRS	GO_MODULE_FILES
GO_SRCPATH	GO_VERSION_DEFAULT
GROUP_SPECIFIC_PKGS	GRUB_NETWORK_CARDS
GRUB_PRESET_COMMAND	GRUB_SCAN_ARGS
GZIP	HASKELL_COMPILER
HASKELL_ENABLE_HADDOCK_DOCUMENTATION	HASKELL_ENABLE_LIBRARY_PROFILING
HASKELL_ENABLE_SHARED_LIBRARY	HASKELL_OPTIMIZATION_LEVEL
HAS_CONFIGURE	HEADER_TEMPLATES
HG_REPO	HG_REPOSITORIES
HG_TAG	HOMEPAGE
HOST_PKGTOOLS_ARGS	HOST_SPECIFIC_PKGS
HOWL_GROUP	HOWL_USER
ICCBASE	ICECAST_CHROOTDIR
ICON_THEMES	IDOBASE
IGNORE_CCACHE	IGNORE_INFO_DIRS
IGNORE_INTERACTIVE_FETCH	IMAKE
IMAKEOPTS	IMAKE_MAKE
IMAKE_MANINSTALL	IMAP_UW_CCLIENT_MBOX_FMT
IMDICTDIR	INCOMPAT_CURSES
INFO_DIR	INFO_FILES
INFO_FILES_VERBOSE	INFO_MSG
INIT_SYSTEM	INN_DATA_DIR
INN_GROUP	INN_USER
INSTALLATION_DIRS	INSTALLATION_DIRS_FROM_PLIST
INSTALL_ENV	INSTALL_SH_OVERRIDE
INSTALL_SRC	INSTALL_TEMPLATES
INSTALL_UNSTRIPPED	IRCD_HYBRID_IRC_GROUP
IRCD_HYBRID_IRC_USER	IRCD_HYBRID_MAXCONN
IRCD_HYBRID_NICLEN	IRCD_HYBRID_SYSLOG_EVENTS
IRCD_HYBRID_SYSLOG_FACILITY	IRCD_HYBRID_TOPICLEN
IRIX	IRRD_USE_PGP
JABBERD_GROUP	JABBERD_LOGDIR
JABBERD_PIDDIR	JABBERD_SPOOLDIR
JABBERD_USER	JAVA_APP_PATH
JAVA_APP_TARGETS	JAVA_BINPREFIX
JAVA_CLASSPATH	JAVA_HOME
JAVA_LD_LIBRARY_PATH	JAVA_NAME
JAVA_UNLIMIT	JAVA_WRAPPERS
JPEG_ACCEPTED	JPEG_DEFAULT
KERBEROS	KERMIT_SUID_UUCP
KJS_USE_PCRE	KNEWS_DOMAIN_FILE

KNEWS_DOMAIN_NAME	KRB5_ACCEPTED
KRB5_DEFAULT	LANGUAGES
LAPACK_LIBS	LAPACK_LIBS
LATEX2HTML_ICONPATH	LDCONFIG_ADD_CMD
LDCONFIG_REMOVE_CMD	LDD
LEAFNODE_DATA_DIR	LEAFNODE_GROUP
LEAFNODE_USER	LIBDVDCSS_HOMEPAGE
LIBDVDCSS_MASTER_SITES	LIBRSVG_TYPE
LIBTOOL	LIBTOOLIZE_PLIST
LIBTOOL_M4_OVERRIDE	LIBUSB_TYPE
LICENSE	LINKER_RPATH_FLAG
LINK_RPATH_FLAG	LINUX_BASE_NODEPS
LINUX_BASE_PREFERRED	LINUX_BASE_REQUIRED
LINUX_LOCALES	LOCALBASE
LOCALBASE_LOCKTYPE	LOCALPATCHES
LOVE_DATA	LOVE_GAME
LOVE_VERSION	LP32PLATFORMS
LP64PLATFORMS	LUA_CDIR
LUA_COMPILER	LUA_DOCDIR
LUA_EXAMPLESDIR	LUA_INCDIR
LUA_INTERPRETER	LUA_LDIR
LUA_LINKER_MAGIC	LUA_PKGPREFIX
LUA_SELF_CONFLICT	LUA_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED
LUA_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE	LUA_VERSION_DEFAULT
LUA_VERSION_REQD	Lua
MACHINE_PLATFORM	MAILAGENT_DOMAIN
MAILAGENT_EMAIL	MAILAGENT_FQDN
MAILAGENT_ORGANIZATION	MAJORDOMO_HOMEDIR
MAJOR_OS_VERSION	MAKEINFO_ARGS
MAKE_DIRS	MAKE_DIRS_PERMS
MAKE_ENV	MAKE_FILE
MAKE_FLAGS	MAKE_JOBS
MAKE_JOBS_SAFE	MAKE_PROGRAM
MANCOMPRESSED_IF_MANZ	MANINSTALL
MANZ	MASTER_SITES
MASTER_SITE_BACKUP	MASTER_SITE_LOCAL
MASTER_SITE_MOZILLA	MASTER_SITE_OVERRIDE
MASTER_SITE_PERL_CPAN	MASTER_SORT
MASTER_SORT_RANDOM	MASTER_SORT_REGEX
MECAB_CHARSET	MEDIATOMB_GROUP
MEDIATOMB_USER	MIPSROBASE
MIREDO_GROUP	MIREDO_USER
MISSING_FEATURES	MKDIR
MKPIE_SUPPORTED	MLDONKEY_GROUP
MLDONKEY_HOME	MLDONKEY_USER
MONOTONE_GROUP	MONOTONE_USER
MOTIFBASE	MOTIF_TYPE
MOTIF_TYPE_DEFAULT	MPI_TYPE
MSGFMT_STRIP_MSGCTXT	MSGFMT_STRIP_MSGID_PLURAL
MTOOLS_ENABLE_FLOPPYD	MUST
MV	MYSQL_CHARSET
MYSQL_DATADIR	MYSQL_EXTRA_CHARSET
MYSQL_GROUP	MYSQL_USER
MYSQL_VERSION	MYSQL_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED
MYSQL_VERSIONS_ALL	MYSQL_VERSION_DEFAULT
NAGIOSCMD_GROUP	NAGIOSDIR
NAGIOS_GROUP	NAGIOS_USER
NATIVE_APPEND_ABI	NATIVE_APPEND_ELF
NATIVE_EXEC_FMT	NATIVE_MACHINE_PLATFORM
NATIVE_OBJECT_FMT	NBPAX_PROGRAM_PREFIX

NETBSD_LOGIN_NAME	NMH_EDITOR
NMH_MTA	NMH_PAGER
NODE_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED	NODE_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE
NODE_VERSION_DEFAULT	NODE_VERSION_REQD
NOLOGIN	NOTE
NOT_FOR_PLATFORM	NOT_PAX_ASLR_SAFE
NOT_PAX_MPROTECT_SAFE	NO_BUILD
NO_CHECKSUM	NO_CONFIGURE
NO_SKIP	NS_PREFERRED
NULLMAILER_GROUP	NULLMAILER_USER
OASIS	OASIS_BUILD_ARGS
OBJHOSTNAME	OBJMACHINE
OCAML_FINDLIB_DIRS	OCAML_FINDLIB_REGISTER
OCAML_FINDLIB_REGISTER_VERBOSE	OCAML_SITELIBDIR
OCAML_TOPKG_DOCDIR	OCAML_USE_DUNE
OCAML_USE_FINDLIB	OCAML_USE_JBUILDER
OCAML_USE_OASIS	OCAML_USE_OASIS_DYNRUN
OCAML_USE_OPAM	OCAML_USE_OPT_COMPILER
OCAML_USE_TOPKG	OMF
ONLY_FOR_COMPILER	ONLY_FOR_PLATFORM
OPENSSSH_CHROOT	OPENSSSH_GROUP
OPENSSSH_USER	OPSYS
OPSYS_EMULDIR	OPSYS_VERSION
OS	OSS_TYPE
OSX	OSX_TOLERATE_SDK_SKEW
OS_HAVE_ALSA	OS_HAVE_RCD
OS_VARIANT	OS_VERSION
OTF_FONTS_DIR	OVERRIDE_DIRDEPTH
OVERRIDE_GEMSPEC	OVERRIDE_GNU_CONFIG_SCRIPTS
OVERRIDE_ROCKSPEC	OWN_DIRS
OWN_DIRS_PERMS	P4GROUP
P4PORT	P4ROOT
P4USER	PACKAGES
PALMOS_DEFAULT_SDK	PAMBASE
PAM_DEFAULT	PAPERSIZE
PASSIVE_FETCH	PATCHDIR
PATCHFILES	PATCH_ARGS
PATCH_DEBUG	PATCH_DIST_ARGS
PATCH_DIST_CAT	PATCH_DIST_STRIP
PATCH_FUZZ_FACTOR	PATCH_STRIP
PATH	PCCBASE
PEAR	PEAR_CHANNEL
PEAR_CHANNEL_ALIAS	PEAR_CHANNEL_VERSION
PEAR_CMD	PEAR_LIB
PEAR_PACKAGE_XML	PERL5
PERL5_CONFIGURE	PERL5_CONFIGURE_DIRS
PERL5_LDFLAGS	PERL5_LICENSE
PERL5_MODULE_TYPE	PERL5_PACKLIST
PERL5_PACKLIST_DIR	PERL5_PERLBASE
PERL5_SITBASE	PERL5_USE_PACKLIST
PERL5_VENDORBASE	PFCTL
PFVAR_H	PF_VERSION
PGGROUP	PGHOME
PGPKGSRCDIR	PGSQL_TYPE
PGSQL_VERSION	PGSQL_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED
PGSQL_VERSION_DEFAULT	PGUSER
PG_LIB_EXT	PHP
PHPCOMMON_MK	PHPPKGSRCDIR
PHP_BASE_VERS	PHP_CHECK_INSTALLED
PHP_EXTENSION_DIR	PHP_INITIAL_TEENY
PHP_PKG_PREFIX	PHP_VERSION

PHP_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED	PHP_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE
PHP_VERSION_DEFAULT	PHP_VERSION_REQD
PILRC_USE_GTK	PKGCONFIG_BASE
PKGCONFIG_FILE	PKGCONFIG_OVERRIDE
PKGCONFIG_OVERRIDE_STAGE	PKGDIR
PKGGNUDIR	PKGINFODIR
PKGLOCALEDIR	PKGMANDIR
PKGNAME	PKGNAME_REQD
PKGPATH	PKGREVISION
PKGSRC_BLAS_TYPES	PKGSRC_CHANGES
PKGSRC_COMPILER	PKGSRC_KEEP_BIN_PKGS
PKGSRC_LOCKTYPE	PKGSRC_MAKE_ENV
PKGSRC_MESSAGE_RECIPIENTS	PKGSRC_MKPIE
PKGSRC_MKREPRO	PKGSRC_OVERRIDE_MKPIE
PKGSRC_RUN_TEST	PKGSRC_SETENV
PKGSRC_SLEEPSECS	PKGSRC_TODO
PKGSRC_USE_CTF	PKGSRC_USE_FORTIFY
PKGSRC_USE_RELRO	PKGSRC_USE_SSP
PKGSRC_USE_STACK_CHECK	PKGTASKS_DATAFILE
PKGTOOLS_ARGS	PKGTOOLS_ENV
PKG_ALTERNATIVES	PKG_APACHE
PKG_APACHE_ACCEPTED	PKG_APACHE_DEFAULT
PKG_BEST_EXISTS	PKG_BUILD_OPTIONS
PKG_COMPRESSION	PKG_CONFIG
PKG_CONFIG_PERMS	PKG_CREATE_USERGROUP
PKG_DB_TMPDIR	PKG_DEBUG_LEVEL
PKG_DEFAULT_OPTIONS	PKG_DESTDIR_SUPPORT
PKG_DEVELOPER	PKG_DISABLED_OPTIONS
PKG_FATAL_ERRORS	PKG_FC
PKG_FILELIST_CMD	PKG_GECOS
PKG_GID	PKG_GROUPS
PKG_GROUPS_VARS	PKG_HOME
PKG_INIT_SCRIPTS	PKG_JAVA_HOME
PKG_JVM	PKG_JVMS_ACCEPTED
PKG_JVM_DEFAULT	PKG_LEGACY_OPTIONS
PKG_LIBTOOL	PKG_OPTIONS
PKG_OPTIONS_DEPRECATED_WARNINGS	PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_OPTS
PKG_OPTIONS_LEGACY_VARS	PKG_OPTIONS_NONEMPTY_SETS
PKG_OPTIONS_OPTIONAL_GROUPS	PKG_OPTIONS_REQUIRED_GROUPS
PKG_OPTIONS_VAR	PKG_PHP
PKG_PHP_MAJOR_VERS	PKG_PHP_VERSION
PKG_RCD_SCRIPTS	PKG_REFCOUNT_DBDIR
PKG_REGISTER_SHELLS	PKG_RESUME_TRANSFERS
PKG_SHELL	PKG_SUGGESTED_OPTIONS
PKG_SUPPORTED_OPTIONS	PKG_SYSCONFBASE
PKG_SYSCONFBASEDIR	PKG_SYSCONFDIR
PKG_SYSCONFDIR_PERMS	PKG_SYSCONFSUBDIR
PKG_SYSCONFVAR	PKG_TOOLS_BIN
PKG_UID	PKG_UPDATE_FONTS_DB
PKG_USERS	PKG_USERS_VARS
PKG_VERBOSE	PLEASE
PLIST	PLIST_AWK
PLIST_AWK_ENV	PLIST_SRC
PLIST_SUBST	PLIST_TYPE
PLIST_VARS	POPTOP_USE_MPPE
POSSIBLE_GFORTRAN_VERSION	POST_FETCH_HOOK
PREFER	PREFER_NATIVE
PREFER_NATIVE_PTHREADS	PREFER_PKGSRC
PREFIX	PREPEND_PATH
PRE_ROOT_CMD	PRIVILEGED_STAGES
PS	PTHREAD_AUTO_VARS

PTHREAD_CFLAGS	PTHREAD_LDFLAGS
PTHREAD_LIBS	PTHREAD_OPTS
PTHREAD_TYPE	PVM_SSH
PYPKGPREFIX	PYTHON_FOR_BUILD_ONLY
PYTHON_SELF_CONFLICT	PYTHON_VERSIONED_DEPENDENCIES
PYTHON_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED	PYTHON_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE
PYTHON_VERSION_DEFAULT	PYTHON_VERSION_REQD
PYVERSSUFFIX	QMAILDIR
QMAIL_ALIAS_USER	QMAIL_DAEMON_USER
QMAIL_LOG_USER	QMAIL_NOFILES_GROUP
QMAIL_PASSWD_USER	QMAIL_QMAIL_GROUP
QMAIL_QUEUE_DIR	QMAIL_QUEUE_EXTRA
QMAIL_QUEUE_USER	QMAIL_REMOTE_USER
QMAIL_ROOT_USER	QMAIL_SEND_USER
QORE_LATEST_MODULE_API	QORE_MODULE_API
QORE_MODULE_DIR	QORE_USER_MODULE_DIR
QORE_VERSION	QPOPPER_FAC
QPOPPER_SPOOL_DIR	QPOPPER_USER
RAKE_NAME	RASMOL_DEPTH
RCD_DIR	RCD_ORDER
RCD_SCRIPTS	RCD_SCRIPTS_DIR
RCD_SCRIPTS_EXAMPLEDIR	RCD_SCRIPTS_MODE
RCD_SCRIPTS_SHELL	RCD_SCRIPT_SRC
RCD_SUBR	RDOC
READLINE_DEFAULT	READLINE_TYPE
REAL_ROOT_GROUP	REAL_ROOT_USER
RECURSIVE_MAKE	RELAY_CTRL_DIR
RELRO_SUPPORTED	REPLACE_AWK
REPLACE_BASH	REPLACE_CSH
REPLACE_KSH	REPLACE_LUA
REPLACE_NODEJS	REPLACE_OCTAVE
REPLACE_PERL	REPLACE_PERL6
REPLACE_PHP	REPLACE_PYTHON
REPLACE_QORE	REPLACE_R
REPLACE_RUBY	REPLACE_RUBY_DIRS
REPLACE_RUBY_PAT	REPLACE_SH
REPLACE_TEXLUA	REPLACE_WISH
REQD_DIRS	REQD_DIRS_PERMS
REQD_FILES	REQD_FILES_MODE
REQD_FILES_PERMS	RESOLV_AUTO_VARS
RESOLV_LDFLAGS	RESOLV_LIBS
RM	ROCKSPEC_NAME
ROCKSPEC_SPECFILE	ROOT_CMD
ROOT_GROUP	ROOT_USER
RPCGEN	RPM
RPM2PKG_PLIST	RPM2PKG_PREFIX
RPM2PKG_STAGE	RPM2PKG_STRIP
RPM2PKG_SUBPREFIX	RPMFILES
RPMIGNOREPATH	RPM_DB_PREFIX
RSSH_CVS_PATH	RSSH_RDIST_PATH
RSSH_RSYNC_PATH	RSSH_SCP_PATH
RSSH_SFTP_SERVER_PATH	RUBY
RUBYGEM	RUBYGEM_NAME
RUBYGEM_OPTIONS	RUBYGEM_VERBOSE
RUBY_ABI_VERSION	RUBY_ARCH
RUBY_ARCHINC	RUBY_ARCHLIB
RUBY_BASE	RUBY_BASERIDIR
RUBY_BUILD_DOCUMENT	RUBY_DLEXT
RUBY_DOC	RUBY_DYNAMIC_DIRS
RUBY_EG	RUBY_ENCODING_ARG

RUBY_EXTCONF	RUBY_EXTCONF_CHECK
RUBY_EXTCONF_DEBUG	RUBY_EXTCONF_MAKEFILE
RUBY_GEM_ARCH	RUBY_GEM_BASE
RUBY_INC	RUBY_LIB
RUBY_LIB_BASE	RUBY_NAME
RUBY_NOVERSION	RUBY_PKGPREFIX
RUBY_RAILS	RUBY_RAILS52_VERSION
RUBY_RAILS60_VERSION	RUBY_RAILS61_VERSION
RUBY_RAILS70_VERSION	RUBY_RAILS_ACCEPTED
RUBY_RAILS_DEFAULT	RUBY_RAILS_REQD
RUBY_RAILS_STRICT_DEP	RUBY_RIDIR
RUBY_SETUP	RUBY_SHLIB
RUBY_SHLIBALIAS	RUBY_SHLIBVER
RUBY_SIMPLE_INSTALL	RUBY_SITARCHLIB
RUBY_SITELIB	RUBY_SITELIB_BASE
RUBY_SITERIDIR	RUBY_SLEXT
RUBY_SRCDIR	RUBY_STATICLIB
RUBY_SUFFIX	RUBY_SYSRIDIR
RUBY_USE_PTHREAD	RUBY_VENDORARCHLIB
RUBY_VENDORLIB	RUBY_VENDORLIB_BASE
RUBY_VER	RUBY_VERSION
RUBY_VERSIONS_ACCEPTED	RUBY_VERSIONS_INCOMPATIBLE
RUBY_VERSION_DEFAULT	RUBY_VERSION_REQD
RUBY_VER_DIR	RUN
RUN_LDCONFIG	SCO
SCREWS_GROUP	SCREWS_USER
SCRIPTS_ENV	SCROLLKEEPER_DATADIR
SCROLLKEEPER_REBUILddb	SCROLLKEEPER_UPDATEDb
SDIST_PAWD	SERIAL_DEVICES
SETGIDGAME	SETGID_GAMES_PERMS
SETUID_ROOT_PERMS	SH
SHLIB	SHORTNAME
SIGN_PACKAGES	SILC_CLIENT_WITH_PERL
SITE_SPECIFIC_PKGS	SKIP_DEPENDS
SMF_INSTANCES	SMF_MANIFEST
SMF_METHODS	SMF_METHOD_SHELL
SMF_METHOD_SRC	SMF_NAME
SMF_PREFIX	SMF_SRCDIR
SNIPROXY_GROUP	SNIPROXY_USER
SOURCE_BUFFSIZE	SPECIAL_PERMS
SPECIFIC_PKGS	SSH_SUID
SSP_SUPPORTED	SSYNC_PAWD
STEP_MSG	STRIP
STRIP_DBG	STRIP_DEBUG
STRIP_DEBUG_SUPPORTED	STRIP_FILES_SKIP
SU	SUBDIR
SUBST	SUBST_CLASSES
SUBST_FILES	SUBST_FILTER_CMD
SUBST_MESSAGE	SUBST_NOOP_OK
SUBST_SED	SUBST_SHOW_DIFF
SUBST_SKIP_TEXT_CHECK	SUBST_STAGE
SUBST_VARS	SUNWSPROBASE
SUSE_PREFER	SU_CMD
SVN_EXTRACTDIR	SVN_REPO
SVN_REPOSITORIES	SVN_REVISION
SYSCONFBASE	TBL
TERMCAP_TYPE	TERMINFO_DEFAULT
TERMINFO_TYPE	TEST
TEST_DEPENDS	TEST_DIRS
TEST_ENV	TEST_ENV_SHELL
TEST_MAKE_CMD	TEST_MAKE_FLAGS

TEST_TARGET	TEXTLIVE_IGNORE_PATTERNS
TEXTLIVE_REV	TEXTLIVE_UNVERSIONED
TEXTMFSITE	TEX_FORMATS
TEX_HYPHEN_DAT	TEX_HYPHEN_DEF
TEX_TEXMF_DIRS	THTTTPD_LOG_FACILITY
TINYDYN_USER	TLSWRAPPER_CHROOT
TO	TOOLS_ALIASES
TOOLS_ALWAYS_WRAP	TOOLS_ARGS
TOOLS_BROKEN	TOOLS_CMD
TOOLS_CMDLINE_SED	TOOLS_CREATE
TOOLS_DIR	TOOLS_FAIL
TOOLS_GNU_MISSING	TOOLS_LDCONFIG
TOOLS_NOOP	TOOLS_PATH
TOOLS_SCRIPT	TOOL_DEPENDS
TTF_FONTDIR	TTF_FONTS_DIR
TYPE	UAC_REQD_EXECS
UCSPI_SSL_GROUP	UCSPI_SSL_USER
UNLIMIT_RESOURCES	UNPRIVILEGED
UNPRIVILEGED_GROUP	UNPRIVILEGED_GROUPS
UNPRIVILEGED_USER	UNWRAP_FILES
UNWRAP_PATTERNS	UPDATE_GEMSPEC
UPDATE_TARGET	URI
USERGROUP_PHASE	USERPPP_GROUP
USER_SPECIFIC_PKGS	USE_ABI_DEPENDS
USE_APR	USE_BSD_MAKEFILE
USE_BUILTIN	USE_CROSS_COMPILE
USE_CURSES	USE_CWRAPPERS
USE_DB185	USE_FEATURES
USE_GAMESGROUP	USE_GCC_RUNTIME
USE_IMAKE	USE_JAVA
USE_JAVA2	USE_LANGUAGES
USE_LIBTOOL	USE_NATIVE_GCC
USE_NETBSD_REPO	USE_PKGSRG_GCC
USE_PKGSRG_GCC_RUNTIME	USE_PKTGTASKS
USE_PKG_ADMIN_DIGEST	USE_RUBY_EXTCONF
USE_RUBY_INSTALL	USE_RUBY_SETUP
USE_RUBY_SETUP_PKG	USE_TOOLS
UUCP_GROUP	UUCP_USER
VARBASE	VARNAME
VIM_EXTRA_OPTS	WARNING_MSG
WCALC_CGIDIR	WCALC_CGIPATH
WCALC_HTMLDIR	WCALC_HTMLPATH
WDM_MANAGERS	WRAPPER_CC
WRAPPER_REORDER_CMDS	WRKDIR
WRKDIR_BASENAME	WRKDIR_LOCKTYPE
WRKLOG	WRKOBJDIR
WRKSRG	X10_PORT
X11	X11BASE
X11_PKGSRGDIR	X11_TYPE
X509_CERTIFICATE	X509_KEY
XAW_TYPE	XLOCK_DEFAULT_MODE
XMKMF	XMKMF_FLAGS
XXX	XXXX
YES	ZSH_STATIC
__stdc__	_vargroups
accept	acquire-localbase-lock
acquire-lock	add
administrator	alloca
alternatives	aslr
asprintf	atlas
autoconf	automake

autoreconf	awk
bash	big-endian
bin-install	bind
binpkg-list	blas
bootstrap-depends	broken
broken_on_platform	bsd
bsd.prog.mk	build
build-env	buildlink-directories
buildlink-oss-soundcard-h	c
c++	ccache
cce	cdefs
ceil	changes
changes-entry	changes-entry-noupdate
check	check-clean
check-files	check-files-clean
check-vulnerable	checksum
checksum-phase	clean
clean-depends	cleandir
commit	commit-changes-entry
compact	compiler
conf	config.guess
config.sub	configuration
configure	configure-env
configure-help	configure_args
connect	cos
cputime	create-usergroup
csh	ctf
cvs	debug
declaration	declare
defined	depend
dependencies	depends
depends-checksum	depends-fetch
deps	describe
destdir	disable
distclean	distinfo
dl	dlopen
do-buildlink	do-clean
do-configure	do-configure-post-hook
do-extract	do-fetch
do-install	emul
emul-distinfo	emul-fetch
emulation	emulator
enable	endian
endif	enomem
err	errx
etc	exp
extract-rpm	fabs
feature	features
fetch	fetch-list
follows	forbids
form	format
fortify	fortify_source
fossil	friend
fts	fts_close
fts_open	fts_read
fts_set	gcc
gethostbyaddr	gethostbyname
gethostbyname2	getopt_long
getprogname	getservbyname
getservbyport	getservent
gettext	git

github	gitlab
glob	gnu
gnu_configure_strict	go
go-deps	golang
guess-license	hashbang
heimdal	help
hg	imake
increment	inet_aton
interp	interpreter
intl	ip4
ip6	ipv4
ipv6	iso
kerberos	krb
krb5	ksh
lapack	latex
libintl_bindtextdomain	libintl_gettext
libintl_textdomain	libnbcompat
libs	libtool
licence	license
lintl	little-endian
lock	locking
lua	lvalue
make	makesum
memory	mercurial
meta	meta-package
meta_package	mit-krb5
mk.conf	mkl
mount	mprotect
mremap	nb
nbcompat	netlib
node	node.js
nodejs	obstack
obstack_ptr_grow	occurs
only	openblas
options	options.mk
order	override
override-intltool	override-message-intltool
package	parallel
path	pax
paxctl	pbulk-index
pc	perl
perl5	perms
php	pkg-build-options
pkg-config	pkg_build_options
platform	plist
post-extract	post-fetch
post-wrapper	pre-build-checks-hook
pre-configure	pre-configure-checks-hook
pre-extract	pre-fetch
print-go-deps	print-plist
print-summary-data	privileged-install-hook
pypi	python
r	readme-all
recv	recvfrom
regcomp	release-localbase-lock
release-lock	relro
rename	reorder
replace	replace_interpreter

reproducible	resolv
root	ruby
send	sendfile
sendto	setenv
setgid	setprogname
setuid	sh
shebang	show
show-all	show-build-defs
show-depends	show-deps
show-distfiles	show-downlevel
show-subdir-var	show-tools
show-var	show-vars
snprintf	socket
ssp	st_mode
stage-install	strcasestr
strict	strip
strndup	strlen
strsep	subst
substitutions	subversion
sun	sunpro
sunwspro	svn
symlink	test
test-env	tex
texlive	tmp
tool	tools
tools-libtool-m4-override	type
ulimit	undefined
undo-replace	unlimit
unprivileged	unprivileged-install-hook
unstripped	update
upload	upload-distfiles
use_tools	user
utimes	vasprintf
verbose	vsnprintf
warn	warning
warnings	warnx
wattr_off	wattr_on
work	wrapper
wrkdir	

Appendix F.

Editing guidelines for the pkgsrc guide

This section contains information on editing the pkgsrc guide itself.

F.1. Make targets

The pkgsrc guide's source code is stored in `pkgsrc/doc/guide/files`, and several files are created from it:

- `pkgsrc/doc/pkgsrc.txt`
- `pkgsrc/doc/pkgsrc.html`
- <https://www.NetBSD.org/docs/pkgsrc/>
- <https://www.NetBSD.org/docs/pkgsrc/pkgsrc.pdf>: The PDF version of the pkgsrc guide.
- <https://www.NetBSD.org/docs/pkgsrc/pkgsrc.ps>: PostScript version of the pkgsrc guide.

F.2. Procedure

The procedure to edit the pkgsrc guide is:

1. Make sure you have checked out the htdocs repository into a sibling directory of your pkgsrc directory. You will need the ability to commit from both pkgsrc and htdocs.
2. Make sure you have the packages needed to regenerate the pkgsrc guide (and other XML-based NetBSD documentation) installed. These are automatically installed when you install the `meta-pkgs/pkgsrc-guide-tools` package.
3. Run **cd doc/guide** to get to the right directory. All further steps will take place here.
4. Edit the XML file(s) in `files/`.
5. Run **bmake** to check the pkgsrc guide for valid XML and to build the final output files. If you get any errors at this stage, you can just edit the files, as there are only symbolic links in the working directory, pointing to the files in `files/`.
6. (**cd files && cvs commit**)
7. Run **bmake clean && bmake** to regenerate the output files with the proper RCS Ids.
8. Run **bmake regen** to install and commit the files in both `pkgsrc/doc` and `htdocs`.

Note: If you have added, removed or renamed some chapters, you need to synchronize them using **cv**s **add** or **cv**s **delete** in the htdocs directory.